Emotional Literacy;
Intelligence with a Heart

By Claude Steiner PhD

© 2003, Claude Steiner. All rights reserved.
# Table of Contents

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS 8

PREFACE TO THE SECOND EDITION 10

**Book One: Emotional Literacy** 13

INTRODUCTION 14

- EMOTIONS AND PERSONAL POWER 15
- FINDING MY TEACHERS 16
- ENTER FEMINISM AND THE EMOTIONS 17
- FOUR DISCOVERIES THAT MADE A DIFFERENCE 18
  1. Strokes and Love 18
  2. The Power of the Critical Parent 18
  3. The Safety of the Cooperative Contract 19
  4. Paranoia and Awareness 20

EMOTIONAL LITERACY IN EVERY DAY LIFE 21

CHAPTER 1. WHAT IS EMOTIONAL LITERACY? 23

- AN INTIMATE DINNER 25
- RETURN OF COMMON SENSE 25
- THE FORGOTTEN HEART 27
- HUNGER FOR EMOTIONS; LOVE AND HATE 29
- EMPATHS AND PSYCHOPATHS 31
- EQ AND IQ 31
- EMOTIONAL INTELLIGENCE AND EMOTIONAL LITERACY 32
- HEART-CENTERED EQ 33
- A THANKSGIVING GIFT 34
- SUMMARY 35

CHAPTER 2. BECOMING AWARE OF YOUR EMOTIONS 37

- ROOTS OF EMOTIONAL AWARENESS 37
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The triune brain</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Reptilian Brain</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Limbic Brain</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THE EMOTIONAL AWARENESS SCALE</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THE VERBAL BARRIER</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BEYOND AWARENESS</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUMMARY</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**CHAPTER 3. TRAINING TO BE EMOTIONALLY LITERATE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>THE APPEAL OF AN EMOTIONALLY LITERATE LIFE</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THE TRAINING PROCESS</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AN ENERGIZING PROCESS</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STRATEGIES OF EMOTIONAL LITERACY TRAINING</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WHERE TO START</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TRAINING TO BE EMOTIONALLY LITERATE</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUMMARY</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Book Two: Emotional Literacy Training**

**CHAPTER 4. OPENING THE HEART**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>THE POWER OF STROKES</td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TROUBLE IN STROKE CITY</td>
<td>61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THE STROKE ECONOMY AND ITS RULES</td>
<td>63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WHY PEOPLE ACCEPT NEGATIVE STROKES</td>
<td>64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THE EMOTIONAL LITERACY TRAINING PROGRAM</td>
<td>64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EMOTIONALLY LITERATE TRANSACTION #0. Ask for permission</td>
<td>64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EMOTIONALLY LITERATE TRANSACTION #1: Giving Strokes; offering honest and truthful statements of affection</td>
<td>65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STROKE ENEMY #1; The Critical parent</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THE POETRY OF STROKES</td>
<td>68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EMOTIONALLY LITERATE TRANSACTION #2: Asking for Strokes: Requesting the affection that we need.</td>
<td>69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EMOTIONALLY LITERATE TRANSACTION #3: Accepting Strokes. Taking in strokes we want</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CASE STUDY IN ACCEPTANCE</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EMOTIONALLY LITERATE TRANSACTION # 4. Rejecting unwanted strokes. „Thanks but no thanks”</td>
<td>72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SEPARATING THE WHEAT FROM THE CHAFF</td>
<td>73</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CHAPTER 5. SURVEYING THE EMOTIONAL LANDSCAPE

I CAN MAKE YOU FEEL, YOU CAN MAKE ME FEEL

EMOTIONALLY LITERATE TRANSACTION # 6. The Action/Feeling Statement

ACTION/FEELING CASE STUDY

ACTION/FEELING ERROR #1: Confusing Action with Motivation

ACTION/FEELING ERROR #2: Confusing Feelings with Thoughts

PRIMARY AND SECONDARY EMOTIONS

ACTION/FEELING ERROR #3. Ignoring the intensity of an emotion

CLARIFYING AN ACTION/FEELING STATEMENT

EMOTIONALLY LITERATE TRANSACTION #7. Accepting an Action/Feeling Statement; non-defensive reception of emotional information

AN ACTION/FEELING TRANSACTION THAT WORKED

EMOTIONALLY LITERATE TRANSACTION #8. Revealing Our Intuitive Hunches. Getting a „reality check“ on an intuition about another person’s actions or intentions

HOW DO OTHERS FEEL?

INTUITION IN ACTION, A CASE STUDY

DISCOUNTING INTUITION

EMOTIONALLY LITERATE TRANSACTION #9. Validating an Intuitive Hunch; A search for the truth-no matter how small

THE PAYOFF: LOVING EMOTIONAL COOPERATION

HOW EMPATHY MATURES

ONE MORE CASE STUDY OF THE EMOTIONAL LANDSCAPE; Putting It All Together

SUMMARY

CHAPTER 6. THE MISTAKES WE MAKE AND WHY WE MAKE THEM

THE GAMES PEOPLE PLAY

SCRIPTS: DECISIONS THAT RULE OUR LIVES.

RESCUER, PERSECUTOR, VICTIM

THE RESCUER, PERSECUTOR, VICTIM MERRY-GO-ROUND

ROLE SWITCHING
CHAPTER 7. TAKING RESPONSIBILITY

PERSONAL CASE IN POINT
OBSTACLES TO TAKING RESPONSIBILITY
EMOTIONALLY LITERATE TRANSACTION #10. Apologizing for Our Rescues
EMOTIONALLY LITERATE TRANSACTION # 11. Apologizing for Persecution
MESSY AND NEAT
APOLOGIES AND GUILT
REQUIREMENTS AND ERRORS OF AN APOLOGY
APOLOGY ERROR #1: Giving lip service
APOLOGY ERROR #2: Blaming the Victim
EMOTIONALLY LITERATE TRANSACTION #12: Apologizing for playing the victim role
EMOTIONALLY LITERATE TRANSACTION #13: Accepting apology.
ACCEPTING APOLOGY ERROR #1: Forgiving too easily
ACCEPTING APOLOGY ERROR #2 Bashing the Righteous
ACCEPTANCE OF APOLOGY WITH CONDITIONS
EMOTIONALLY LITERATE TRANSACTION #14: Rejection of an apology
CASE STUDY Both Sides of Apology
EMOTIONALLY LITERATE TRANSACTION # 15: Begging Forgiveness. An emotionally literate way of apologizing for an action that has deeply hurt another person
CASE STUDY Begging Forgiveness
ONE THAT DIDN’T WORK
SUMMARY

CHAPTER 8. EMOTIONAL LITERACY WITH COUPLES AND CHILDREN

EQUALITY AND HONESTY IN INTIMATE RELATIONSHIPS
  Equality
  Honesty
  To summarize
  Pre-nuptial emotional agreements
  Honesty is the best policy
  Housekeeping required
Review, review, review 139
Be flexible 139
A walk in the woods 140
EMOTIONAL LITERACY AND CHILDREN 142
The Wrong Way and the Right Way 142
A Better Approach 143
Emotional Literacy Guidelines for Children 144
Keep the heart open 144
Don’t power play your children 144

Chapter 9. EMOTIONAL LITERACY IN THE WORKPLACE 149
PRACTICE WHAT YOU PREACH 152
START AN EMOTIONAL LITERACY STUDY AND SUPPORT GROUP 154
THE TEN COMMANDMENTS OF EMOTIONAL LITERACY 155

Book Three: The Emotional Warrior 156

CHAPTER 10. THE EMOTIONAL WARRIOR 157
THE ANCIENT REGIME 157
UNDERSTANDING CONTROL POWER 157
AVENUES TO POWER 159
THE MANY FACES OF PERSONAL POWER 160
OUR INNER ENEMY; THE CRITICAL PARENT 161
SEVEN SOURCES OF POWER 162
A SHIFT FOR THE MILLENNIUM 166

CHAPTER 11. ONE LAST WORD 168
NOTES FOR PHILOSOPHERS 169
Love as a Fundamental Good 169
Lying and Honesty 169
The Truth 171
Violence and the Dark Side 172
Violence and Abuse 173
The Critical Parent 174

APPENDIX A. EMOTIONAL AWARENESS QUESTIONNAIRE 175
YOUR EMOTIONAL AWARENESS PROFILE 179

APPENDIX B. EMOTIONAL LITERACY WORKSHEETS 181

CONTRACTS 182
ABOUT STROKES 183
THE CRITICAL PARENT 184
THE STROKE ECONOMY 185
OPENING THE HEART 186
SURVEYING THE EMOTIONAL LANDSCAPE PART 1 187
SURVEYING THE EMOTIONAL LANDSCAPE PART 2 188
TAKING RESPONSIBILITY 189

REFERENCES 192
ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

This book is the culmination of thirty five years of work. Thanks are due, first and foremost, to Eric Berne for taking me on as a disciple and teaching me most of what I know as a psychotherapist.

More than any book I have written before, this book was the result of very closely knit teamwork. Thanks to Jude Hall who besides editing these pages through many versions and revisions, has added examples, elaborations and ideas, made my language richer, and acted as my intellectual and philosophical conscience as this work took shape. Thanks to Paul Perry who co-wrote the original version of this book. A very special thanks to Fred Jordan who was available, one simple phone call away, to give his advice throughout the writing stages of the book. I consider myself blessed to have such a wise and kind maven on my team. I also thank Ron Levaco and Charles Rappleye, who in a similar capacity gave sage advice at some of the strategic crossroads of this book’s journey. Thanks to Deirdre English and Gail Rebuck, who steadfastly supported my writing for many years before this book found an agent and a publisher. Thanks to Beth Roy, Mimi Steiner, Rod Coots, Bruce Carroll, Ron Levaco, and Saul Schultheis-Gerry for their reading of and many comments on the final manuscript, and to Ramona Ansolabehere and Michael Hannigan for useful critical commentary on the text. Adriane Rainer’s reading, informed by many hours of previous editorial work on this material, was especially useful. Ann McKay Thoroman, my editor at Avon Books, took an immediate liking to this book and persevered with unflagging interest and hard work.

Thanks are due to all the people who over the years attended my seminars, workshops, and group and individual therapy, and all my friends and relatives, who shared their life experiences with me and provided the information upon which to base the assertions I make in this book. This is particularly true of my children Mimi, Eric, and Denali, my brother Miguel, my sister Katy, and finally Jude Hall, my wife who for months was on hand at a moment’s notice to brainstorm or labor on a portion of text or for whatever I needed to keep me going while bringing this book to completion. In particular I want to thank the many emotional warriors around the globe, among them Marc Devos, Marielle Debouverie, Elisabeth Cleary, Elizabeth Edema, Michael Epple, Sylvia Epple, Becky Jenkins, Anne Kohlhaas-Reith, Ron Hurst, Denton Roberts, Beth Roy, Hartmut Oberdieck, Richard Reith and Mimi Steiner.

Going back to the 1960s when these ideas were born, thanks are due to Nancy Graham for first uttering the term „emotional literacy,” which I promptly scooped up and have used ever since. I thank Hogie Wyckoff for helping shape the concepts of Pig Parent (now the Critical Parent) and the Stroke Economy. Hogie was also the first to insist that honesty was an essential component of a cooperative way of life. Bob Schwebel deserves thanks for introducing cooperation to my thinking, and Marshall Rosenberg was the first to point out the importance of linking actions with
feelings. Thanks are due to all the members of the RAP Center in Berkeley who contributed their lives and ideas to the theories presented in this book, in particular to Becky Jenkins, Carmen Kerr, Hogie Wyckoff, Robert Schwebel, Joy Marcus, Rick de Golia, Sarah Winter, and those who joined us later, Sandy Spiker, Eric Moore, Darca Nicholson, Melissa Farley, Mark Weston, Marion Oliker, JoAnn Costello, Beth Roy, Randy Dunigan, and Barbara Moulton. Finally, I thank David Geisinger for pointing out that a relationship is as good as its dialogue, Chris Moore for informing me on the latest philosophical arguments about the nature of truth, and Marc Devos for suggesting that emotional literacy training could be divided into three stages: an opening of the heart, a gathering of information, and taking of responsibility.
PREFACE TO THE SECOND EDITION

Love, the Great Enabler

I have undertaken to rewrite *Achieving Emotional Literacy*,\(^1\) five years after its publication in 1997 and fully in the twenty first century. The book is longer, more elaborate and it incorporates feedback originated by the original book. It integrates information from readers and clients, what I have gleaned from other books on the subject of emotional intelligence, from evolutionary psychology and neuroscience and from what I have learned in my personal life over the last years.

It should come as no surprise to the reader that a book such as this is often written to answer life-long questions that preoccupy the writer; this book is no exception. No matter how objective I try to be—and I think that I succeed reasonably well in that purpose—the fact remains that this work is, as most such work in psychology, the product of both science and personal predilection.

Since the publication of *Achieving Emotional Literacy* in 1997, emotional intelligence has passed from being a welcome, fresh way of thinking to becoming a number of widely disparate movements. The largest of these movements was a consultant’s „growth business” with scores of companies offering to evaluate and improve people’s EQ’s in the work place. Regretfully, in that environment emotional intelligence became synonymous with „mature,” „stable” and „hard working.” These are fine qualities but, like apple pie and the flag, they are indistinguishable from all that is desirable, and as vague. No systematic methods of teaching emotional intelligence have been developed and no dramatic progress has been made in measuring EQ. Some questionnaires were developed which arguably have something to do with emotional intelligence and may actually help select better workers but none can claim to yield any convincing measurements of EQ.

Twenty five years ago, I conceived emotional literacy as a tool of human emancipation from the tyranny of soulless rationality and power. But the field of emotional intelligence in the workplace has lost its edge; it is being used to help companies spot bright-eyed hard working employees; But emotional skills are a great deal more than positive attitudes; they can humanize and improve any enterprise far beyond anything that has been experienced so far and its potential is being squandered on diluted, half measures. I fear that it is morphing into yet another corporate, human engineering lubricant with little specific relationship to emotional literacy.

On the other hand EQ has also become a subject matter in schools where thousands of devoted teachers are applying one or more of the scores of EQ teaching aids developed by as many companies. Here the results seem more promising as what is being taught is unquestionably beneficial. Children are being educated about their different feelings, how to speak about them and how to express and control them. The children are being trained with a kind-hearted attitude with a focus on develop-
ing friendly cooperative relationships. Evidence suggests that these efforts are having beneficial results in terms at least of how much aggression is being seen in schools that teach the subject.²

Emotional Literacy

The point of this book goes beyond workplace maturity or schoolyard aggression. It is understood that emotional literacy is a source of personal power indispensable for success in today’s world.³ Here are five essential, thoroughly time-tested assertions, each thoroughly novel, and which must be understood to appreciate this work’s scope:

✦ Emotional literacy is love-centered emotional intelligence.
✦ Loving (oneself and others) and being loved (by oneself and others) are the essential conditions of emotional literacy
✦ The capacities of loving and accepting love, lost to most people, can be recovered and trained with five precise, simple, transactional exercises.

In addition to improving loving skills, emotional literacy training involves three further skills of increasing difficulty; each one supported by a further set of transactional exercises.

These skills are:

a. Speaking about our emotional and what causes them,

b. Developing our empathic intuition capacity and

c. Apologizing for the damage caused by our emotional mistakes.

Practice of these specific transactional exercises in personal relationships at home with friends and at work, will, over time produce increased emotionally literacy.

With these exercises you can become a more loving person; a person who feels love toward people, who is able to love passionately in a sustained way, to be affectionate with friends and friendly on the streets. You will be better capable to recognize, express and control your emotions, realize when you are angry or joyful, ashamed or hopeful and know how to make your feelings known in a productive manner. You will become more empathic and will recognize the emotional states of others and respond to them compassionately. You will be able to take responsibility for the emotional damage caused by your mistakes and apologize for them effectively. Instead of undermining and defeating you, your emotions will empower you and enrich your life and the lives of those around you.

In summary:
Emotional literacy--intelligence with a heart--can be learned through the practice of specific transactional exercises which target the awareness of emotion in ourselves and others, the capacities to love others and oneself while developing honesty, and the ability to take responsibility for our actions.

This is what this book will teach you, no more and no less.
Book One:

Emotional Literacy
INTRODUCTION

Before getting to the substance of this book—Emotional Literacy Training—I want to tell you what qualifies me to write on the subject.

This book is based on both my professional and scientific training enhanced by my experience as I struggle to understand my own emotional life. I believe that my combined professional, scientific and personal experiences have translated into an understandable and productive manuscript.

I was raised in a state of utter emotional illiteracy; as was expected of white, middle class boys destined to become professional men of my generation. I ignored my own emotions believing that it was shameful, weak and frightening to dwell on them. Equally I disdained and ignored the emotions of others. All the while my emotions, especially my unacknowledged need for love dictated and distorted most of my behavior. When I think back, sad to say, many of the things I did as I grasped for love were emotionally painful to the people in my life. I am told that people tolerated my hurtful ways because I made up with a naïve, narcissistic charm what I lacked in sensitivity.

You might think that I decided to study psychology because I was interested in people’s feelings. In fact my interest in psychology had to do with the belief that it would give me power over people; to be in a position to help, but also to dominate and control. As a student of psychology, emotions were the furthest thing from my mind. Actually, since the early 1900’s, the emotions had been excluded from scientific psychology. Why? Because the method that was used to study emotions, introspection, was deemed to be biased and subject to distortion.

Science is a discipline that encourages detachment and rationality uncluttered by emotion. A watershed event in my life happened when, as part of my training, while doing physiology experiments with animal muscles, I had to run a wire down the backbone of live frogs to destroy their spinal cords. As I performed this grisly task I told myself that if I wanted to be a real scientist, it was important to suppress my horror. The decision, added to the earlier cultural and personal training of my childhood and adolescence, took hold and affected my life from then on. To my everlasting embarrassment, I later participated in experiments in which rats were starved to learn about their responses to severe hunger.

As a result of this decision to suppress my emotions during this critical stage of my professional training I became even less interested in my own feelings and the feelings of others. I had infatuations but no real attachments and little respect, regret, or guilt when it came to the way I treated people in my life. I never felt sustained joy and I never cried. I lost friends and was prone to depression and despair. Although I have a respectable IQ, when I look back at myself I see an emotionally illiterate young man with a very low emotional intelligence or EQ (emotional quotient).
When, in my thirties, I finally stumbled upon my emotions, I was, like an explorer discovering an exotic land, amazed, frightened and captivated by the emotional landscape within and around me. Eventually I decided to make emotions the subject of ongoing inquiry in my psychological practice; a quest which absorbs me to this day. Though at times arduous, I find this quest rewarding and empowering in my personal and working relationships.

EMOTIONS AND PERSONAL POWER

Power is generally thought of as control, mainly the ability to control people and money. When we think of a powerful person, for example, we picture a captain of industry, a major politician or a superstar athlete who commands millions in salary; a person with nerves of steel and the capacity to be emotionally detached and cool. We have come to expect these attributes in powerful people.

Most of us never attain that kind of power and may not even be interested in it. Still, while we may not be interested in absolute control over every living thing, we emulate powerful people in the belief that in the real world emotions are best kept under tight rein.

But the sort of personal power that is derived from the security of satisfying relationships and fruitful work are ultimately incompatible with a tight rein on our emotions. On the contrary, personal power depends on having a comfortable relationship with emotions, ours and other people’s. Emotional literacy requires that our emotions be listened to and expressed in a productive way.

Not everyone who suffers from emotional illiteracy is emotionally deaf and dumb as I was. Another form of emotional powerlessness occurs when we are excessively emotional and out of control with our feelings. In that situation instead of being out of touch with the world of emotions were all too aware and responsive to them as they hound and terrorize us. Either extreme spells trouble. Whether tightly controlled or too loosely expressed our emotions can disenpower us.

Unfortunately, in today’s world, all to often, the interpersonal experience is laced with emotional pain. Emotional literacy training facilitates cooperative harmonic relationships at home and at work and gives us the tools to avoid a increasingly dark, cynical view of life. Emotional literacy makes it possible for every conversation, every human contact and every partnership, however brief or long-term, to yield the largest possible rewards for all involved. Even though it doesn’t guarantee unlimited access to cash and things, emotional literacy is a key to personal power because emotions are powerful; if you can make them work for you rather than against you.
FINDING MY TEACHERS

What was it that put me in touch with the positive power of my emotions? My encounters and subsequent relationships with two different people, seven years apart: a rogue psychiatrist and a feminist partner.

The first person who significantly changed my life was Eric Berne, a forty-five-year-old psychiatrist at the time when I met him in 1956. Berne psychoanalytic training had recently ended because of differences with his training analyst. Since the early 50’s he had been investigating and developing some radical departures from psychoanalysis that would later be known as Transactional Analysis.

In 1955 he started holding weekly meetings with a small group of professionals at his apartment a few blocks from San Francisco’s Chinatown. I was taken to one of these meetings by Ben Handelman, a friend and coworker at the Berkeley Jewish Community Center. I found what Berne had to say very interesting and joined in the lively discussion. After the meeting Berne asked me to return the next week, and I did. From then on except for the years that I was at the University of Michigan studying for a doctorate in clinical psychology, I rarely missed Berne’s meetings until he died in 1971. I became Berne’s disciple and learned everything he had to teach about his evolving theory of transactional analysis.

Transactional analysis (TA) is a technique that investigates human relationships by focusing on the precise content of people’s interactions. TA is a powerful way of analyzing how people deal with each other and how they can change their lives by correcting their behavioral mistakes.

This was a sharp departure from traditional psychoanalysis, which focuses on what goes on inside of people, while TA deals with what happens between them. But the most radical idea of Berne’s was that you could actually cure people of their emotional problems by showing them how to act differently with each other in their social transactions rather than by focusing on understanding why they were emotionally disturbed. The idea was that while understanding may be helpful, changing one’s behavior is what would actually cure people of their emotional troubles. A radical view in those highly psychoanalytically influenced times this is an accepted and common place understanding. Yet it is remains controversial in some circles.

Emotions were not, at the time, our focus. In fact, we saw them as being largely irrelevant to our work, which was simply studying interpersonal transactions from a rational perspective. Yet Berne’s concepts had everything to do with the eventual development of Emotional Literacy Training. Two concepts were key: one was the ego states, especially the inner „Natural Child,” which is the source of our emotional lives, and the other was the concept of strokes.

Berne discovered in each normal person three parts or distinct modes of behavior, which he called the Child, the Parent, and the Adult. He called these three parts of the normal personality ego states, and he believed that we acted as one of them at any given time. You can learn about the ego states in one of the many books written
about TA. Suffice it to say for now that the Child is the creative and emotional part of the self, the Adult is a rational “human computer,” and the Parent is composed of a set of protective attitudes about people. Berne taught us to pay close attention to the “social transactions“ between people, because you can learn everything you need to know about a person by closely watching the interactions of their ego states.

The other very important concept developed by Berne he called “strokes.“ Even though strokes can be positive or negative, a “stroke,“ in the way that we will use the term in this book, refers to a positive stroke, a show of affection. When you say to someone, “I like the way you look today,“ you are giving that person a positive stroke; a stroke, for short. By the same token, when you lovingly pat your child on the back or listen carefully to what your partner is saying, you are giving him or her a stroke as well. Strokes can be physical or verbal and are defined as the basic unit of human recognition.

The kinds of strokes that people give and take are especially informative. Some people exchange mostly negative, even hateful strokes and their lives are very different from those who manage to attain a dependable diet of positive, loving strokes. When people love themselves and others, their transactions will be governed by their loving hearts and they will neither give nor accept negative strokes.

These two concepts: ego states and strokes, formed the theoretical foundation of the transactional analytic study of emotions.

ENTER FEMINISM AND THE EMOTIONS

I would never have made the connection between TA and emotional literacy were it not for another life-changing relationship that plunged me into the world of feelings. Recently divorced and almost overnight, I became deeply involved with a feminist--Hogie Wyckoff--who for the next seven years taught me the essentials of emotionality. Basically, she demanded that I “come out“ emotionally: that I be honest about my feelings, that I ask for what I want, and above all that I learn to say “I love you“ from the heart. None of these demands was easy for me to meet. In fact, they were excruciatingly difficult. Under Hogie’s loving, watchful tutelage, however, I made great emotional strides. It was exhausting work for her and in the end she could endure it no longer, but she left me a changed man.

I met Hogie in 1969 while teaching a course in Radical Psychiatry at the Free University in Berkeley. Eventually the two of us (and others whom I mention in the acknowledgments) established a RAP Center at the Berkeley Free Clinic. RAP stood for „Radical Approach to Psychiatry“ and was essentially a protest movement against the abuses of psychiatry as practiced in those days. We started a number of „contact“ groups, in which participants were taught the principles of Transactional Analysis as it applied to cooperative relationships. The most popular contact group to evolve from this work was called „Stroke City.“ In this group we began to develop the techniques for learning emotional literacy.
FOUR DISCOVERIES THAT MADE A DIFFERENCE

1. Strokes and Love

Three times a week „Stroke City“ gathered in a large room at the RAP Center. In this room about twenty people, for two hours in the afternoon could give strokes, accept strokes, ask for strokes, and even give themselves strokes in a safe, protected environment.

The leader of the group scrutinized every transaction. It was his or her job to make sure that people gave each other clean, positive strokes, unclouded by hidden or overt criticism. When needed, the leader helped the participants to correct their transactions to make sure the strokes were heard and accepted when wanted.

We created these early meetings to teach people to get along in a competitive and harsh world. However, we soon observed an unexpected side effect. Participants would often look around after some time and declare that they „loved everyone in the room.“ They would speak of pervasive feelings of love as they touched their hearts and they left these meetings with a light step and a happy, loving glow on their faces.

We assumed that people were just cheered up by these activities in a manner similar to what happens at a good ball game. But upon closer examination it became clear that these exercises had a profound effect on the participants’ loving emotions. They spoke of loving feelings, of having an open heart, of a transcendent experience of affection an oceanic feeling and so on. What had started as an exercise to practice how to be cooperative and positive turned out to be much more. It affected the participants loving capacities in a powerful and heart-expanding way. It was then that we began to see the connection between strokes and love and how learning how to exchange positive strokes might have an effect on people’s overall capacity to love. Eventually it became clear that strokes and loving feelings are intimately related to each other.

2. The Power of the Critical Parent

During these „Stroke City“ sessions, as we discovered the connection between strokes and love we also discovered the pervasive activity of the Critical Parent. The Critical Parent (the „Pig Parent“ as we called it in those days) is the internal oppressor, that inner voice that keeps us from thinking good thoughts about ourselves and others. For instance, when some of the participants tried to give or accept strokes, they would literally hear „voices in their heads“ that told them why the strokes should not be given or taken. These voices told the participants, in either subtle or overt ways, that they were stupid, bad, or crazy for getting involved in this strange exercise and that if they persisted they would be shunned and isolated from the group. We came to discover that virtually everyone has some kind of ruthless internal bully making him feel badly about himself. This phenomenon has been observed by many who have given it different names; Freud called it the „harsh superego,“ AA calls it „stinking thinking.“ It has been called low self esteem,
catastrophic expectations, negative ideation, the inert spirit, the dark side, the inner critic and on and on. The fact is that it is a pervasive, well recognized presence, the cause of great distress in our lives and a common preoccupation in psychotherapy.

Eric Berne called this internal adversary the Critical Parent ego state. However the Critical Parent is an ego state that does not necessarily have anything to do with our mothers or fathers, though it often does. In fact, it is a composite of all the put-downs that we received in childhood when people—parents, relatives, siblings, friends, teachers—tried to „protect,” control and manipulate us. It is important to remember that the Critical Parent has an external source; it is like a tape recording of other people’s thoughts and opinions. The Critical Parent is an external influence that is allowed to run (and sometimes ruin) our lives. It invaded our minds when we were young and fortunately, it is possible to turn it down, or off, and effectively neutralize it when we grow up.

The Critical Parent is especially interested in preventing people from getting strokes. Why? Because when we get loving strokes in our lives we are much more likely to disregard the Critical Parent’s and its efforts to „protect” and control us.

Even though people need positive strokes to thrive, it became clear in Stroke City that when they tried to give, ask for, or accept strokes, they often experienced extreme, sometimes paralyzing anxiety, embarrassment and even self-loathing. Some people hear a voice saying, „You’re selfish. You don’t deserve strokes,” or „This is stupid, you’ll make a fool of your- self; shut up“; others just feel anxious or self-conscious every time they give or ask for a stroke. In the face of such Critical Parent opposition very few find it easy to exchange strokes.

Almost everyone has an internal bully who slanders him or her from time to time, especially when he or she is emotionally vulnerable. Part of the work of „Stroke City“—and Emotional Literacy Training—is to recognize and neutralize the Critical Parent which not only attacks our self-esteem but also the self-esteem of people around us. It became clear that defusing the Critical Parent was a priority when teaching people about strokes and love.

3. The Safety of the Cooperative Contract

Even though most people enjoyed „Stroke City“ and wound up feeling good, there were always a few who felt bad, left out, afraid or hurt. It became clear that they had succumbed to the attacks of the Critical Parent. To protect the participants from anything that triggered or supported the Critical Parent’s activity, I decided to start each meeting with an agreement, called a „cooperative contract,“ which promised that the participants and the leader would never engage in any attempts to manipulate or power play anyone. It also specifically required that participants would never do anything they did not honestly want to do. The contract further promised that the leader would take responsibility to oversee these safety agreements and would not permit any transactions that came from the Critical Parent.
A contract of confidentiality was added to the cooperative contract in order to facilitate emotional safety and protection from the Critical Parent. These two agreements, cooperation and confidentiality dramatically reduced the number of people who felt badly at the end of our Stroke City meetings. Consequently more participants were able to enjoy the love enhancing effects of the exercise. These calming, trust-enhancing agreements are a very important aspect of emotional literacy training today. They keep the Critical Parent “out of the room“ and establish a feeling of safety and trust. They are essential for the difficult and sometimes even frightening work that needs to be done to fully incorporate love and all the other feelings into our lives.

4. Paranoia and Awareness

The RAP center eventually dissolved, but the essence of “Stroke City“ continued in emotional literacy training workshops in the form of „Opening the Heart“ exercises. After twenty five years of conducting these workshops, I have refined the heart-opening techniques developed in the sixties and added new ones.

For instance, people often developed suspicions and fears about the motives and opinions of others in the group, sometimes to the point of paranoia. I had found that in certain mental patients paranoia builds itself around a grain of truth just as a pearl builds itself around a grain of sand. The standard psychiatric approach to paranoia was to disprove it point by point and to blame it on „projection.” So, for example, if David thinks that Maria hates him, the traditional psychiatric wisdom presumes that it is David who hates Maria. Because he can’ face his angry feelings in himself—so it is thought-- he is „projecting“ his hatred onto her.

This approach, in my opinion, made people more rather than less paranoid. I found in my work that paranoia generally builds itself around a grain of truth just as a pearl builds itself around a grain of sand. Our approach, in David’s case, would be to search for some measure of validation for David’s paranoid feelings. We found that once a grain of truth in the paranoid fantasy was acknowledged, the person was usually able to let go of his paranoid ideas.

So, if Maria admits that she is, in fact, angry at David's sloppiness, then David can let go of the idea that she hates him. That feeling, he can now realize, is a paranoid exaggeration of her actual, much less strong feelings of annoyance which he sensed or intuited. David had simply picked up—intuitively--some hidden negative feelings from Maria and blown them up, out of proportion. When that happens the Critical Parent usually gets involved an fans the fires of suspicion with its own negative messages. Once David sense that Maria is angry at him the Critical Parent can easily add: "Sure she is mad a you, you are a slob.”

This is important because in our emotional lives we often pick up hidden negative feelings from other people, which can be very disturbing. This validating method was inspired by the work of R. D. Laing, the Scottish psychiatrist who pointed out that when we invalidate or deny people’s experiences, or how they see things, we
make mental invalids of them. Ronald Laing found that when one's intuition is denied we can be made to feel crazy even if we are perfectly healthy, mentally.

For instance: Margaret’s husband Chris is attracted to a neighbor and Margaret picks up subtle clues about his hidden infatuation. If she confronts Chris with her suspicions and he denies them over and over, while continuing his infatuated behavior, her nagging intuitive fears might build undaunted, with the help of the Critical Parent, to the point of paranoia.

Based on this information, rather than accusing people of being irrational and discounting their way of seeing things when they developed intuitive, even paranoid, hunches we learned to search for the grain of truth in them. By finding this truth, no matter how small, we could move a relationship away from suspicion, paranoia and denial, back toward communication, feedback, and honesty. At the same time, by testing the validity of people’s emotional intuitions and hunches we trained their empathic capacities which are essential to emotionally literate relationships. This approach is a basic aspect of emotional literacy training wherein we encourage people to express their hunches, intuitive perceptions and paranoid fantasies and instead of discounting them seek their validation, even if only with a small grain of truth.

These four ideas are the cornerstones of emotional literacy training:

1) The connection between strokes and love,
2) the importance of fighting the Critical Parent,
3) The usefulness of safety contracts when learning emotional literacy and
4) the validation of “paranoid” hunches as a way of training intuition and cleansing relationships of fear, suspicion and Critical Parent influences are cornerstones of emotional literacy training.

EMOTIONAL LITERACY IN EVERY DAY LIFE

As I developed these techniques over the years I have adopted them myself and invited my family members, friends, coworkers, and intimates to use them as well. I wrote books, delivered lectures, and held workshops. All along, according to people around me, my emotional life improved. I began to give and take love and affection more freely, I got in touch with my feelings, the feelings of others and the reasons for their existence, I learned to be honest about how I felt and decreased my tendencies to be defensive when confronted. Finally, I learned to acknowledge and sincerely apologize for my mistakes. Most important, however, is the realization that I am still a „work in progress,” that I am still making improvements on my own emotional literacy.

One frequent super-stroke I get from friends and trainees is that I practice what I teach and that my behavior is congruent with my theories. That is not to say that I
have achieved perfect emotional literacy, only that I am making good progress and continue to learn day by day.

The chapters you are about to read contain a training program that is a proven method of developing emotional intelligence. I have seen it work for me and people around me, so I know it can work for you.
CHAPTER 1.

WHAT IS EMOTIONAL LITERACY?

To be emotionally literate is to be able to handle emotions in a way that improves your personal power and improves the quality of life for you and—most importantly—the quality of life of the people around you.

Emotional Literacy helps your emotions to work for you instead of against you. It improves relationships, creates loving possibilities between people, makes cooperative work possible, and facilitates the feeling of community.

All of us have something to learn about our emotions. Some people grow up with a high level of emotional literacy, but few are as smart in the area of emotions as they could be.

As a long-time teacher of emotional literacy, I have worked with hundreds of people to examine and improve their emotional intelligence. I have seen the extreme discomfort most people, especially men, initially show at the mere mention of the word emotions. Men often fear that deep and painful secrets will be unleashed if they reveal their feelings. Most often, people think that emotional literacy training will lead to a loss of control and power in their personal and business lives.

There is some validity to the fear that a loosening of our emotional restraints could get us into trouble. But emotional literacy is not a mere unleashing of the emotions. Just as important is learning to understand, manage and control them.

Emotions exist as an essential part of human nature. When we are cut away from them we become psychopaths. By acknowledging and managing our feelings and by listening and responding to the emotions of others we enhance our personal power.

Being emotionally literate means that you know what emotions you and others have, how strong they are, and what causes them. Being emotionally literate means that you know how to manage your emotions because you understand them. With emotional literacy training, you will learn how to express your feelings, when and where to express them, and how they affect others. You will also develop empathy and learn to take responsibility for the way your emotions affect others. Through this training, you will become an emotional gourmet, aware of the texture, flavor, and aftertaste of your emotions. You will learn how to let your rational skills work hand-in-hand with your emotional skills, adding to your ability to relate to other people. Hence, you will become better at everything you do with others: parenting, partnering, working, playing, teaching, and loving.

Emotional mistakes are very common and often very destructive. If you don’t think that is true, consider the following examples of emotional illiteracy I have gathered from the newspapers over the past years:
When presented with a second-place award at a statewide high school competition the bandleader Kent Baker threw the award into a garbage can. The school’s director, Phil Simon, began to argue with the judges, saying his band deserved first place.

Following a football game in La Habra, an upper-middle-class community in California, an irate mother shouted obscenities at one of the referees and then grabbed him from behind as he tried to walk away. Three men then joined in the attack, punching him in the face and breaking his jaw, which had to be wired shut for several weeks.

Another parent actually killed the father of his grade school son’s martial arts competitor and was sent to jail for many years as a consequence.

In England, a wealthy magistrate and his wife lied under oath, saying the wife had been driving their Range Rover when it ran into a wall. The couple, who had been drinking, were worried the magistrate might lose his driver’s license and his seat on the bench. John Bosomworth, fifty, and his wife Anne, thirty-eight, were jailed for fifteen and nine months, respectively, when witnesses denied their story. And their marriage was wrecked by the stigma of being branded liars in their community.

Top presidential adviser Dick Morris had to leave President Bill Clinton’s campaign when it was reported that he shared state secrets with a prostitute in order to impress her.

And let’s not forget the monumental mistake that US President Bill Clinton committed when he allowed his need for sexual strokes to dominate his good judgment when he involved himself in an intimate relationship with a twenty one year old White House aide, Monica Lowinsky. To the everlasting disappointment of millions of his supporters he gave his enemies an opportunity to nearly wreck his presidency.

Daily newspapers are filled with stories such as these, accounts of successful and otherwise intelligent people making grave emotional mistakes. These are stories in which emotions like anger, fear or shame make smart people behave stupidly rendering them powerless.⁹

The truth is we all make emotional mistakes, though perhaps not such extreme ones. Though our errors may not find their way into the newspapers, almost all of us would have to admit that at one time or another we have been inordinately moved by anger, fear, insecurity, sexual need or jealousy, or have chosen not to take responsibility for an improper action. In the end these mistakes weaken us and our loved ones.
Emotional literacy increases our personal power. I will make that point again and again throughout this book, but let me illustrate it here with a story.

Nancy and Jonathan, who’d been married for some time, had invited Robert for dinner. Nancy and Robert were old friends, going back to high school where they had dated briefly. Nancy had prepared a lovely meal and had even brought out candles for the event. When they sat down to eat, however, Robert did not seem to care about the decor or the food in front of him. As he pushed his food around on the plate, Robert talked about his split with his wife. She had come home from work one evening and announced that she was leaving the relationship. She assured Robert that there was no other man, but refused to give further explanations for her departure; she just did not want to be married any longer.

He was despondent and didn’t know what would become of him. „Face it, she just doesn’t want me anymore,“ Robert blurted out miserably, after two glasses of wine. „Now how am I going to meet someone else? I’m not as good looking as I used to be, and I don’t look forward to cruising the bars and answering personal ads.“

Nancy understood perfectly what her old friend was talking about. The last year she had spent more and more time in the mirror scrutinizing her face, worrying that she looked old beyond her years. Aging had made her feel a new sense of insecurity. She had a little more wine.

Jonathan’s day had been a long and hard one so he excused himself and went to bed. Nancy and Robert found themselves alone. The two old friends talked more about Robert’s failed marriage. Conversation then turned to the romantic beginning and long duration of their wonderful friendship. Then Robert made a remark about his fading attractiveness. Nancy touched by his vulnerability assured him that he was very handsome and should have no trouble finding another relationship. On the verge of tears, he squeezed Nancy’s hand. She moved over on the couch and gave him a hug.

Then their cheeks and lips brushed, and they suddenly found themselves kissing each other passionately. After a few frenzied minutes Nancy sat up.

„Stop,“ she said: „We shouldn’t do this. “

Robert stood up, shaken. „I’d better leave,“ he said, too embarrassed to look at Nancy as he walked to the door. „I’m sorry.“ With one final glance at Nancy, he said good night and fled out the door.

RETURN OF COMMON SENSE

Nancy slept fitfully. The next morning, after lying awake and thinking for a long time, she told her husband what had happened. She explained that they had both
been tipsy and depressed, and that Robert seemed so needy that she had lost her common sense, for a moment.

Jonathan’s response was not as strong as she feared. He was upset at first, but then he remembered that they had once made a vow to be truthful with each other. He realized Nancy could have said nothing about the kiss and he might never have known. Yet he also imagined finding out in the worst possible way, a year from now, perhaps, when a guilty Robert confessed to Jonathan over a beer, or Nancy made a slip of the tongue.

Jonathan felt very secure about Nancy’s love and he realized that Nancy meant to protect him by telling him about the incident. He could also see that she was very moved about Robert’s predicament and also afraid that Jonathan would not forgive her for her loss of control. He realized that Nancy had been feeling insecure about her looks and his love for her and was vulnerable to Robert’s attention. Although his first feeling was anger, he realized that making a scene wouldn’t make him feel better, or resolve the situation they were in. He realized he might turn a minor issue into a deep rift, damaging his marriage.

Rather than exploding with uncontrolled emotion or being overcome by jealousy, he tried to understand Nancy’s actions from her point of view. Next he told Nancy of his anger, shame and jealousy, and having spoken about how he felt he was able to overcome these feelings. He admitted that he had not been sufficiently attentive to her, wrapped his arms around her and hugged her warmly. Then, after explaining his intentions to Nancy and giving Robert a call, he drove across town to Robert’s apartment.

„Nancy told me what happened,“ he said as he sat down on the couch in Robert’s living room. „I don’t like it but I understand. I’m not angry. I assume that this was a mistake and won’t happen again, right?“ „God no!“ Robert assured him. „I’m so sorry. “

„Thanks then,“ said Jonathan, offering his hand in friendship. „I think things will be okay.“

An event that began innocently enough as a simple dinner party of old friends rapidly escalated into a sexual encounter. Emotional mistakes of this sort usually remain a dark secret, undermining all the relationships involved. Sometimes, if the truth comes out, the result is a fight (verbal or physical) that leads to festering emotional wounds that eventually result in divorce and lost friendships. Handled badly, it could have led to the ugly sort of incident that we read about in the newspapers. It is the rare person who, like Jonathan, stops and thinks before deciding how to act on such an emotionally charged event. Yet Jonathan was able to speak about, sort out his feelings and keep them in check, until he could express them in a productive manner and prevent his life from being damaged by emotions spinning out of control.
He was able to empathize with Nancy and Robert’s emotional state realizing he might have done a similar thing in their place. As a result of their emotionally literate exchange, Jonathan and Nancy found a deeper respect for each other. They were able to open a dialogue about some of the rough spots developing in their current relationship that actually strengthened their marriage. Talking about their emotions—expressing and controlling them—did not leave them feeling unprotected. Rather, it gave them a renewed sense of personal power and confidence about their relationship. It helped them flourish as a couple and enabled them to hold on to their friendship with Robert.

In many ways this story defines all the issues relevant to emotional literacy. Jonathan realized that he was quite angry and jealous. And he understood the reasons for those feelings. He also empathized with Nancy’s affection for Robert and with her wish to comfort him. Jonathan could understand that she was flattered by Robert’s passionate attention especially since he, Jonathan had been somewhat neglectful of her. In addition, he felt for Robert’s sadness and fear of being alone and his attraction for Nancy.

On her part Nancy was able to experience and then control her sexual impulses with Robert and later be honest with Jonathan. She was able to express her regret without being defensive or afraid.

Once he understood his feelings better, Jonathan was able to control his impulse to lash out. Finally, Jonathan realized the importance of keeping the vows of complete honesty between him and Nancy. All of this took skills that some people develop early in life, but that all of us can learn at any time. To devote time to learning these skills is to pursue emotional literacy.

THE FORGOTTEN HEART

Most people would not act the way Jonathan or Nancy did in the above story. Why is that? Why do so many smart people act in emotionally dim-witted ways? The answer is that we have lost touch with our feelings and never learned to deal with them. Why has this happened?

We are emotionally illiterate because we have suffered and continue to suffer so many painful emotional experiences that our emotional systems have shut down. How do our feelings shut down? Let me begin with an example of physical injury.

Several years ago Chuck, a young grape farmer on the ranch next to mine in Mendocino County, absentmindedly reached into the rear of an operating hay baler. He felt a shock travel up his arm. He pulled his hand back and looked at it. With an odd lack of emotion or alarm, he wondered where his index and middle finger had gone. Rotating his hand, he saw the two fingers hanging by threads of skin.

At first, he felt nothing. Then the pain came thundering in, and at last he realized the two fingers had been cut off. Today, after many operations, Chuck’s fingers--
reattached to his hand but lifeless--constantly remind him of his accident. He is able to speak about the accident calmly even though others cringe just thinking about it.

Why did Chuck at first feel nothing and even now feels less than others when thinking about the dreadful accident? Because his nervous system, to keep him from being overwhelmed, temporarily went into shock and blocked the pain. The shock reaction is highly useful. Because Chuck didn’t feel the pain, he had time to absorb what had happened, to think rationally about it.

Numbing is a natural response to trauma. By temporarily sparing us the pain of a wound it gives us a chance to escape or to make lifesaving decisions we could not make if we were blinded by agony and horror. However, the physical numbness that follows physical hurt is limited. It is short-lived, providing just a couple of minutes of anesthesia before the pain comes flooding in, but it is sufficient to give us a window in which to make possibly life saving decisions,

The numbness that invades us as the result of emotional hurt is similar. Physical trauma tends to be a one time event and the numbing it causes tends to be temporary, but when cruelty and emotional trauma persists the numbing becomes chronic. We survive uncontrollable, ongoing psychological trauma by throwing up defense mechanisms--psychological walls--that insulate us from our painful emotions and separate us from hurtful people and the pain they cause us. Emotional trauma can be vividly re-experienced when we remember what happened. Emotional numbing keeps us from having tormenting thoughts, flashbacks, or nightmares. This may sound like a good thing, but it’s a trade-off that can be very problematic. The psychological walls we erect to separate us from emotional pain can become permanent and also separate us from kind, loving people and feelings of joy, hope or love. What keeps us from feeling emotional pain can also keep us from feeling emotional pleasure. In addition, the emotional walls we erect will on occasion collapse, and flood us with chaotic, sometimes destructively strong emotions.

Some people oscillate between numbness and a disabling hypersensitivity to all emotions. Both these extremes are forms of emotional illiteracy. Whether emotions are absent or all too present they fail to perform their powerfully helpful functions.

To recover from emotional damage it is important that we be allowed to repeatedly recall the traumas that caused our withdrawal and discuss them with sympathetic listeners. But typically we don’t discuss and recover from such traumas. Instead, we just get used to a state of emotional numbness or chaos.

Emotional traumas such as parental abuse or alcoholism are often shrouded in shameful secrecy and don’t get „talked out.“ Emotional traumas is that they recur because we don’t learn how to avoid the people (alcoholics, abusive people) who cause them, instead we seem to seek them out an repeat patterns of emotional abuse. That is why the emotional traumas of a lifetime are likely to accumulate and fester in the dark recesses of the soul, crippling the victim’s emotional heath.
My years of observation have persuaded me that not just sufferers of post-traumatic stress but the majority of us live in a state of semi-permanent emotional shock, continually reinforced by recurring painful experiences and have lost touch with most of our feelings. We forget traumatic incidents, don’t remember how we felt, and don’t know anyone who would listen patiently and sympathetically long enough to sort it all out. Consequently we go through life emotionally anesthetized, with most of our feelings locked up in our hearts, constantly disappointed in a wary and unresponsive world.

Certainly not all of us come from abusive homes or have alcoholic parents. But even the commonplace ups-and-downs of coming of age and going through our workaday lives can still be quite painful and result in a certain degree of self-protective numbness. Emotional shocks start early in childhood and continue throughout our lives. We are yelled at while playing an exciting game („Will you shut up for a minute?“), or left alone when we are afraid. („You’ll get over it.”) Our parents may fight or simply ignore each other. We are hit or mocked by other children, sometimes even by those we think are our friends. We are capriciously scapegoated or we are cruelly snubbed.

Two examples well-illustrate these types of silent trauma. One acquaintance of mine recalls how, when she was twelve, her two most beloved friends handed her a letter in which they made fun of the way she looked and the way she danced, told her that she was stupid and stuck-up, and announced that they were dropping her as a friend. To this day she is flooded by feelings of sadness and anger when she thinks about that awful experience. Another friend relates how an older boy would come up to him every day while he waited in line for lunch in junior high school and make fun of his nose. He „went along“ with the joke but was profoundly humiliated. This emotional torment went on for a whole school year.

Childhood can be full of emotional stress and even abuse. Often the affection we crave is denied us or used to manipulate our behavior, given only if we are „good,“ withheld if we are „bad.“ While all this is going on, we are silently urged--within our families and at school--to conceal what we feel and long for. To „spill our guts“ about our feelings, we are taught, would be rude, humiliating or indiscreet. We are taught a life style for emotional illiteracy. To fit in we must first close off from our emotions.

Our parents often care only about our most obvious problems—whether a bully is after us or whether we are having trouble making friends. They are not often interested in our subtler agonies—rebuffs, embarrassments, romantic disappointments or feelings of inadequacy. Some parents are uncomfortable asking their children how they feel and rarely discuss their own emotions.

HUNGER FOR EMOTIONS; LOVE AND HATE

At the center of all of this emotional confusion is love and its opposite, hate. We long to love and be loved. When instead of being loved we are treated hatefully we are
left to walk around with our thwarted needs and wounded feelings locked inside of us, not knowing what to do or who to speak to about them. We can’t talk about our feelings, least of all about the love that we need. We don’t understand the hatred that we feel and we understand the feelings of others even less. We hide our emotions or we lie about them or pretend not to feel them.

In our intimate relationships, where emotions are supposedly allowed free rein, many of us have been hurt so often that we remain subtly detached even in the throes of passionate love. Long-forgotten heartaches prevent us from fully letting go and giving ourselves to another without maintaining some secret, self-protective distance. We seldom allow ourselves the sweetest of emotional experiences—the vulnerable state of deeply loving someone without reservation. Instead our resentments build upon our disappointments sometimes developing to full-fledged hatreds. Once hatred is unleashed it infects everything and love recedes completely.

Most of us sense that there should be more to life. We hunger for the intimacy of deep feeling. We hunger for a connection to others, to understand someone and be understood by him or her. In short we long to love and be loved.

But how do we get there? We know in our hearts that being an emotional person, having heart-felt passions—loving, crying, rejoicing, even suffering—are rich, valuable experiences. In fact, we constantly seek indirect, artificial, or vicarious ways of having emotional experiences. We take drugs, or go to action, horror, and romantic movies; we watch sitcoms and soap operas on TV; we gamble, jump off bridges with bungee cords attached to our ankles or parachute from airplanes all in search of emotional stimulation. These activities afford us a taste of what we long for when we can’t find the real thing; eventually we prefer them to the risks of real emotional participation.

A particularly horrifying example of this hunger for emotional experience is laid out by James Gilligan in his book, Violence.10 Gilligan has worked for many years with prison inmates guilty of savage murders. These men, he has found, invariably live in a state of extreme emotional numbness. They report having almost no feelings, emotional or physical, to the point of thinking of themselves as living dead. The origin of these men’s numbness is no mystery. Gilligan’s research shows that in almost every case they were themselves victims of abuse, that they were battered by repeated physical and emotional traumas. They lived in a world devoid of reliable love and replete with hatred.

These men say that they commit their unspeakably violent acts hoping that such excesses will break through their numbness and cause them to feel something, anything. Such a person, having committed a brutal murder, may briefly feel that he has awakened from his deathlike anesthesia. But invariably the emotions stirred up by the crime subside and the numbness returns.
This is a sobering example of how the trauma of lovelessness and hatred lead to numbness and deep emotional pathology. Left unchecked, this loveless, hateful pathology passes down through generations.

There’s an urgent need to break the cycle of lovelessness, violence and emotional numbing. One way is by learning emotional awareness, experience the emotion of love and eventually developing empathy—the open hearted ability to feel what others are feeling and responding to it with compassion and kindness. Becoming aware of our loving feelings will open us up to our angers, hatreds and other negative emotions. To become emotionally literate we have to explore, understand and learn to express all of them.

EMPATHS AND PSYCHOPATHS

There are two kinds of people who seem destined to be powerful in the world: psychopaths, who feel nothing, or empaths, who are deeply in touch with the feelings of others. (Don’t take these two extreme types too seriously; they are caricatures and are extremely rare in real life. I bring them up to make a point.)

Psychopaths can easily operate without the constraints that limit other mortals. They can lie, steal, extort, maim, and kill without guilt. When they get a hold over other people, they can become enormously powerful. Consider Caligula, the Roman emperor, Adolf Hitler or Joseph Stalin. History is replete with obvious examples, but examples can be found everywhere, all around: in politics, business, gangs and within certain families.

Empaths, on the other hand, gain power from their emotional skills. Born empaths have an innate gift for empathy that is fostered by their family and their teachers as they go through childhood and adolescence. Jesus Christ, Mahatma Ghandi, Mother Teresa and countless others are historical and mythical examples of empaths. Their talent for loving others, fostering loving cooperation, for bringing out the best in people, gives them the power to get what people want most of all; more than money, more than political power or status, people want to love and be loved.

Again, these are two extremes; many powerful people are neither full-blown psychopaths or empaths. But if you observe carefully, you will probably detect an individual’s preference toward one or the other style.

I, of course, am encouraging you to work toward the empathic ideal.

EQ AND IQ

The value of being an emotional expert is not obvious to everyone, at least not as obvious as the value of being an intellectual expert. Research shows that if you have a high IQ (intelligence quotient) it’s more likely you will do well in school and become productive, successful, and a good learner. Not only that, you’ll probably enjoy
long life and good health. \textsuperscript{11} It seems that such happy results come from intelligence alone, but they don’t. In his book \textit{Emotional Intelligence}, \textsuperscript{12} Daniel Goleman shows that emotional savvy is just as important in success as high IQ. Not only that, he shows that you need emotional intelligence to live a „good life“-one that allows you to enjoy the riches of the spirit. To live well, you need not only a high IQ but a high EQ (emotional quotient).

The term „EQ,“ though snappy, means less than you might think. It is a marketing concept, not a scientific term. An emotional quotient can’t be measured and scored like an intelligence quotient. People have been rating IQ scientifically for nearly a century, though they argue about exactly what it means. Some say IQ precisely pegs an innate quality called intelligence. Others say it measures some less clear-cut quality of people who turn out to be successful in school, and eventually in life. Either way, you can validly and reliably measure a person’s IQ, and it’s proven a good thing to have a high one.

EQ on the other hand, can’t be measured. Trying to rate somebody’s EQ is like guessing how many beans there are in a jar: You can get a rough idea, but you can’t be sure. Still, we can meaningfully speak of EQ as long as we don’t claim to be able to measure it precisely. In chapter Two, there’s a self-scoring questionnaire that will give you a rough idea of what your EQ might be, if it could be measured.

\textbf{EMOTIONAL INTELLIGENCE AND EMOTIONAL LITERACY}

The term „emotional intelligence“ was coined by psychologists Peter Salovey and John Mayer.\textsuperscript{13} Salovey and Mayer are research psychologists who are pursuing and slowly approaching the quantification of emotional intelligence. I coined the term „emotional literacy“ twenty one years ago, and it first appeared in print in my book \textit{Healing Alcoholism} in 1979.\textsuperscript{14}

What is the difference between emotional intelligence and emotional literacy? Briefly as the title of this book indicates, emotional literacy is emotional intelligence from the heart.

Emotional acumen can be organized around a variety of purposes.

One extraordinarily successful version of emotional intelligence is the skill that is displayed by animators of feature films like „The Little Mermaid,“ „The Hunchback of Notre Dame,“ „Schreck“ or „Monsters Inc.“ In these films we see conveyed the most subtle, moving nuances in a wide gamut of emotions with a few lines on a two-dimensional surface. These computer designed emotional triggers are far cheaper and possibly more reliable than any flesh and blood actor can provide. They are based on years of research that began with Charles Darwin’s 1872 book \textit{The Expression of the Emotions in Man and Animals} in which he argued that all mammals show emotions in similar ways thereby demonstrating their genetic commonality and culminating in a system of classification of facial 43 „action units“ which combine into all the possible emotional expressions of the face.\textsuperscript{16}
If what we want is to be able to influence people to buy or vote, we can again use information available to sophisticated ad agencies which are quite successful in using people’s emotions to accomplish their client’s goals.

As a far more dramatic example, if what we want is to intimidate and terrorize people into compliance there is intelligence that has been used from time immemorial and constantly updated by torturers around the world (the Inquisition, the Nazis, the School the Americas, etc) who achieve their purpose by emotional means.

On the personal level we can use our emotional skills to develop self-control or to soothe and isolate ourselves emotionally or we can control others by creating guilt, fear or depression. These skills can be seen as a form of emotional „intelligence“ as well. I see signs that many who agree that emotional intelligence is an important capacity have lost sight of what we really want; those emotional skills that improve people’s lives; not just one person’s or group but all people’s. And the only emotional abilities that improve people’s lives in that long term, humane manner are the love centered skills.

HEART-CENTERED EQ

The avowed purpose of emotional literacy training is to help people work with each other cooperatively, free of manipulation and coercion, using emotions empathetically to bind people together and enhance the collective quality of life. This purpose, not surprisingly, has caused me to organize Emotional Literacy Training around the loving emotion.

The idea that love holds a central place in people’s emotional lives is not a foregone conclusion. The classic book *The Emotional Brain; The Mysterious Underpinnings of Emotional Life* 17 by Joseph LeDoux fails to mention love even once in its index while fear is mentioned more than seventy five times. Daniel Goleman’s *Emotional Intelligence* 18 has twenty index entries related to anger, and only three index entries on love in Chapter One, and none in the rest of the book. Even as everyone, deep in their heart, realizes the importance of love, it is an emotion seldom discussed in detail by experts in the field.

Emotional Literacy Training is centered in the heart and consists of five principal skills:

1. Knowing your own feelings

Do you know your true feelings? Many people can’t define feelings of love, shame, or pride, nor can they tell the reason these undefined feelings are triggered. These same people are unable to tell how strong their emotions are, even if asked to categorize them as subtle, strong, or overwhelming. If you can’t figure out what your feelings are or what their cause and strength is then you can’t tell how much those feelings are affecting you and those around you.
2. Having a heartfelt sense of empathy

Do you recognize other people’s feelings? Do you understand why others feel the way they do? Do you identify with another’s situation or motives? This is the ability to „feel for“ other people, to feel their emotions as we do our own. Most people have only the vaguest idea of what others are feeling. When we are empathic, people’s emotions resonate within us. We intuitively sense what those feelings are, how strong they are, and what caused them.

3. Learning to manage our emotions

Are you in control of your emotions? Knowing our emotions and those of others is not sufficient to become emotionally literate. We need to know when and how emotional expression or the lack of it affects other people. We need to learn how to assert our positive feelings, such as hope, love, and joy. And, we need to know how to express our negative emotions, such as anger, fear, or guilt, in a harmless and productive way or to postpone expressing them until a better time.

4. Repairing emotional damage

Do you know how to apologize and make amends? Being human, we all make emotional mistakes and hurt others but we seldom take steps to remedy our errors and prefer to „sweep them under the rug.” We must learn to recognize what we have done wrong and fix it. To do this, we have to take responsibility, ask for forgiveness, and make amends. These tasks aren’t easy, but if we don’t carry them out, our unacknowledged mistakes will permanently poison our relationships.

5. Putting it all together

Eventually if you learn sufficient skills you develop an ability that I call „emotional interactivity.“ This means you can tune in to the feelings of people around you, sensing their emotional states and how to interact with them effectively.

Hannah used her emotional interactivity skills to avoid an emotional calamity at a Thanksgiving dinner which I attended a few years ago.

A THANKSGIVING GIFT

When Hannah and her husband arrived at the dinner party, she immediately noticed that there was some sort of trouble.

Everyone--the couple giving the party, their three grown children, and four young grandchildren--seemed tense. Jim, one of the sons-in-law, was off in a corner nursing a drink. Other family members were laughing tensely. The host and hostess seemed sad and dazed. Hannah took aside one of her friends and asked her why people seemed anxious. It seemed that Jim had severely upset Judith, his wife’s sister. Jim, a conservative thinker, had been arguing about child-rearing practices with Judith, who was much more liberal. The children had been horsing around and
Jim, only half-jokingly, had told Judith she was spoiling her children and that they
would turn into out-of-control teenagers, drug-addicted and sex-crazed. Judith got
mad and told Jim in no uncertain terms to mind his own business. An uncomfor-
table feeling settled over the festivities.

Hannah took Judith aside and let her vent her anger about Jim’s unwanted criti-
cism. Then she spoke privately with Jim and listened to him express his feelings
about bratty children and indulgent parents. But Jim saw, after talking to Hannah,
that this argument was threatening to ruin everyone’s Thanksgiving. Hannah
brought the two of them together with Mark, one of the husbands who liked them
both. Jim, Judith, Mark and Hannah had a brief conversation in which hurt feel-
ings were soothed and apologies were exchanged. By the time dinner was ready,
everybody was ready to sit down and enjoy the meal.

Hannah had done the right amount of talking to the right people to restore a pleas-
ant emotional climate. She encouraged Jim and Judith to get together with her over
lunch and further work out their conflict. She did all this easily and with a sense of
loving good cheer.

How difficult is it to get to Hannah’s level of emotional interactivity? It’s a whole lot
easier if you start while you are young. Like learning to speak French or to play the
violin, you can acquire these skills far more easily in your youth, as you take advan-
tage of the neurological „window of opportunity“ for emotional learning. But if you
didn’t develop emotional skills during your youth, don’t worry: you can still learn
them as an adult. In fact, most people acquire some emotional literacy skills early
in life and add to them later. Even with average skills, and a little help from your
friends, you can get by. Now that you have this book you have the chance to sys-
tematically improve your emotional literacy; study the lessons in these pages and
put them into practice.

SUMMARY

What Is Emotional Literacy?

The emotionally illiterate experience is that our emotions are our enemies. When
we are emotionally literate we are able to make our emotions work for us and others
around us instead of against us. We learn to handle difficult emotional situations
that often lead to fighting, lying, lashing out and hurting other people and we learn
to enjoy loving, hopeful and joyful emotions instead.

Unfortunately we are at constant emotional risk of trauma, most of it from simple
everyday difficulties of living, some of it from betrayal and disappointment. Without
an emotionally literate outlet all of this emotional pain makes us freeze up to pro-
tect ourselves. When we hide within a protective emotional shell we lose touch with
our feelings and become powerless to understand or control them.
We hunger for emotional experience and we seek it in many ways. Emotional literacy training is a direct and effective method of reestablishing contact with our feelings and their power, especially the power of love.
CHAPTER 2.

BECOMING AWARE OF YOUR EMOTIONS

Nearly everyone feels emotional distress when approached by a homeless beggar. Some of us immediately try to shut off our feelings, preferring to pretend that she doesn’t exist or somehow deserves her fate. Others feel guilt, and may think that they should be giving more money to charity. Still others will actually feel indignant and hostile toward beggars, treating them as unwelcome intruder into their lives.

My own reaction varies. Sometimes I feel fearful or embarrassed, while at other times I feel guilty or angry. If I decide against helping, I look away and quicken my pace. If I decide to help I hand over some coins without looking the beggar in the eyes. If he says, „God bless you,“ I don’t feel blessed. The situation brings me too many unpleasant thoughts about what it must be like to be destitute. In the end I am happy to block the encounter from my mind. If I don’t, I will feel off-balance and agitated for some time. Small wonder that I will go out of my way to avoid the homeless, even if it means crossing the street to do so.

This minute analysis of my emotional response may seem exaggerated and over-done, but think of your own experience. How much of what I describe goes through your mind when you run into a similar situation? How much of it do you experience without fully realizing your feelings? Most of us are not aware of the strong initial reaction that we quickly suppress in such situations. Is there an emotional aftermath for you after these kinds of encounters? Do they leave you shaken or indifferent? Angry, guilty, or self-righteous? Do they bring thoughts of „heartless“ Republicans, „tax-and-spend“ Democrats or welfare cheats?

Although we don’t usually notice it, most of us go through such challenging emotional sea changes daily. Another driver cuts us off on a busy street, a sales clerk is rude, a friend acts cold and distant, our partner rebuffs our advances. We are flooded by emotions and yet we may or may not be aware of the emotions we go through. Let us examine the roots of these emotional experiences in order to increase our awareness of them.

ROOTS OF EMOTIONAL AWARENESS

Eric Berne, originally a psychoanalyst, gave birth to transactional analysis 50 years ago when he divided people’s behavior (the ego in psychoanalytic parlance) into two portions; the archeopsyche which he called „the Child“ for short and the neopsyche which he called „the Adult.“ The Child was allied with our emotional nature and the Adult was rational and untrammeled by emotion.

Berne assumed that the two ego states, and later a third one which he called the Parent, had „specific anatomical representations“ within the brain, in particular,
that the Adult was located in the neocortex while the Child was located in a more primitive portion of the brain. Within short spans of time, he postulated, the ego states can become dominant—one at a time—and can be easily recognized by the average person.

_The triune brain_

A quarter of a century after Berne postulated the three ego states, in 1973, Paul MacLean, senior research scientist at the National Institute of Mental Health proposed that the brain is made up of three distinct subdivisions corresponding to three consecutive evolutionary eras; the reptilian, the limbic and the neocortical.

These findings, very much in vogue for some years, have recently been questioned by neuroscientists who point out that the brain does not function as a collection of separate functional units but rather as a set of interlaced networks which evolve in intimate connection with each other.

In spite of this objection it can be said without violating any neuroanatomical dicta that the two evolutionary stages—reptilian and limbic—are distinguishable from each other and from the neo-cortex which developed later. In the present stage of human evolution a larger and larger brain lead to the full development of the neo-cortex.

_The Reptilian Brain_

The reptilian brain, the first highly complex neural bundle to appear in evolutionary history, supports the basic physiological functions; circulation, respiration, digestion, elimination. It is also involved in mating and territorial behavior; pecking order, defense, aggression and the emotions of anger and fear. In the human being it sits atop the spinal cord and while it has evolved from its original form in lizards and snakes it performs similar functions while at the same time communicating with the two subsequently developing brains, the limbic and the neo-cortical.

_The Limbic Brain_

Not concerned with its offspring, reptiles have no protective behavior repertoire and will abandon or even eat their own eggs as soon as the issue from the female. As evolution progressed and protection of the offspring became an effective survival strategy the limbic brain, according to Lewis et al in _A General Theory of Love_, developed to fulfill that function. Protection of the young within a territory secured by reptilian function is the limbic brain’s purpose. Protection required an affiliative drive based on a hunger for contact and mutual recognition. This hunger for contact (strokes in transactional analysis terminology) maintained the bond between mother and offspring and generated closely knit groupings all of which maximized survival of the young. The emotions of love, sadness, jealousy, hope have their source in the limbic brain and can be observed in „higher” species such as cats, dogs, horses and other warm blooded animals.
According to this view, emotions are inborn, generated automatically in the most primitive, reptilian and limbic portions of our brain. Fear, anger, sadness, love, hope and happiness serve as constant reminders of our animal nature. These emotions are changed and shaped by the experiences that surround us throughout our lives.

Most of us have little awareness of how strong our emotions are or even what triggers them. In fact, few of us even know what emotions we feel. Without such awareness, we cannot hope to develop the empathic and interactive skills that are the highest achievement of emotional literacy.

Awareness of our emotions, a function of the Adult ego state located in the neocortex of the brain is the subject of this chapter. But first let me introduce the Emotional Awareness Scale:

THE EMOTIONAL AWARENESS SCALE

100 % Awareness

???

Interactivity

Empathy

Causality

Differentiation

VERBAL BARRIER

Primal Experience, Chaos

Physical Sensations

Numbness

0% Awareness

The two extremes of the scale (zero awareness and total awareness) are unlikely to occur in real life but the places in between can be fruitfully explored. What follows is a description of each level of the scale. Learning about these levels will help you interpret and understand the questionnaire you have just completed for yourself, which we will come back to at the end of the chapter.
**Numbness.** People in this state are not aware of anything they call feelings. This is true even if they are under the influence of strong emotions. Strangely, other people are often more aware of the numb person’s feelings than she is. While a person in this state may not feel her own emotions, those around her can perceive them from cues such as facial expression, blushing, and tone of voice; however, she is likely to report only coldness or numbness when asked how she feels. Her emotions are in a sort of deep freeze, unavailable to awareness. Her experience is similar to that of an anaesthetized patient with a numb feeling covering up the pain of a dental procedure.

For example, Lucas was a successful thirty-eight-year-old accountant, whom I met, with his wife Clara, during a mediation of their marital difficulties. Clara had just given a tight-lipped, tearful account of her anger and hurt about the way things were between them. I turned to Lucas. He looked stiff and uncomfortable.

„How do you feel, Lucas?“

„Well, I feel that she is being unfair. “

„Okay. We can talk about the fairness of what she says later, when we get to your point of view. But how does the way she talks about you make you feel, emotionally?“

He hesitates, wriggles in his chair, gives me a quizzical look, thinks. Finally, looking embarrassed, he says: „I guess I don’t feel anything. “

„I wonder ... Let’s see, do you have any sensations in your body? Some people feel butterflies in their stomach, lumps in their throat, a painful tingling feeling, or dizziness ...“

„Well, I feel sort of numb all over. Not now so much but when she was talking. “

„You don’t feel anything?“

„Not really. In fact, I feel really distant, as if I were in a fog.

For someone like Lucas, this state of unawareness is a common experience that comes over him in situations in which others might have a strong emotional reaction. On occasion, however, the emotional barrier he lives behind breaks down and his anger breaks through. Once or twice a year Lucas goes on a drinking spree. When that happens he becomes nasty, emotionally abusive, and on occasion breaks some furniture. Then he sobers up and goes through a period of guilt and self-abuse. These outbursts leave him feeling shaken and guilty, but he is too bewildered by his own emotions to arrive at any insight about them.

Eventually renewed numbness returns and he becomes a detached, hard-working accountant again. In psychiatric terms, this state of emotional numbing is known as alexithymia.
**Physical Sensations.** At this level of emotional awareness, the physical sensations that accompany emotions are experienced but not the emotions themselves. In psychiatric terms, this is called somatization.

A person might feel his quickened heartbeat but is not aware that he is afraid. She may notice a pressure in her chest but does not identify it as sadness and depression. He might experience a hot flash, a chill, a knot in his stomach, or ringing in his ears, tingling sensations, even shooting pains. She may feel all of these sensations of the emotion, but not be aware of the emotion itself.

People can be helped to move into a more heightened state of awareness anywhere on this scale:

Lucas, for instance, is generally numb but he can be made conscious of physical sensations if is questioned. As Lucas describes his numb state, I pursue my questioning:

„Good, that is a clear description of what happens to you emotionally when your wife complains about you. But let’s look into your reaction further. Do you have any of the other physical sensations I described before? What else is going on?“

„Actually, I also feel a tight band around my forehead.“

„Anything else?“ I scrutinize his face. „Do you feel a headache?“

„Not really, but I have a feeling that I’m going to get one. I get pretty bad headaches. I’m going to have to take some double-strength painkillers when we leave here.“

When people live in this state of emotional illiteracy, they often consume drugs that target physical sensations with an emotional origin. Although these drugs can have detrimental side effects, they do work temporarily for the person who is trying to cope with his emotional conflicts. They do this by eliminating anxiety, headaches, stomach aches, and other physical sensations that would remind them of emotional problems that need attention. Consequently, the conflicts don’t go away, and the emotional issues remain unresolved. The drugs may temporarily erase or improve the unpleasant sensations, but they throw the body’s chemistry out of balance and lead to harmful short- and long-term effects.

Lucas, as an example, drinks alcohol and coffee and takes over-the-counter painkillers for his sore back and headaches. His doctor has warned him that ibuprofen and acetaminophen taken with alcohol can cause liver damage, so he takes aspirin, which gives him an upset stomach for which he takes an antacid. He drinks two cups of strong coffee in the morning to wake up, then drinks caffeinated diet cola all day to keep himself alert. He also smokes to deal with tension and anxiety. At night he likes to have „a glass or two“ of wine to help him unwind and get to sleep. None of this self-medication leaves him feeling very good, but at least it makes his discomfort manageable.
When people take large quantities of drugs and/or alcohol regularly, they can no longer accurately interpret their bodily experiences. Are these experiences emotional or chemical, exaggerated or understated, healthy or diseased? When a person is so frequently and heavily medicated, it is very difficult to tell exactly what is going on emotionally.

While in this state of emotional unawareness, people are able to inflict great emotional damage on others. Strong emotions that are unacknowledged can explode into irrational behavior. People act out, emotionally of physically abuse their friends and family, feel extreme guilt, then shut down, narrowing their emotional awareness and creating a familiar cycle of abuse, pain, numbness and increased emotional illiteracy.

**Emotional Chaos or Primal Experience.** In this stage, people are conscious of emotions, but they are experienced as a heightened level of energy that is not understood and cannot be put into words. That is why I call it primal, because it is similar to the emotional experience of babies and lower mammals who clearly experience emotions but would not be able to name them.

A person in this emotional state is very vulnerable and responsive to emotions but not necessarily able to comprehend or control them. A person in the primal experience level of awareness is more likely to have ongoing uncontrolled emotional outbursts and fits of impulsiveness or depression than the person whose emotions are frozen out of awareness even if they break through periodically.

Persons in the primal stage will usually be the ones to fall apart first when stress bears down on a whole group. They’ll get scared, cry, miss work, drink excessively. Lucas, as an example of the opposite, works in an extremely high-pressure and stressful environment. At tax time, he is acknowledged as a „cool head“ and trusted with crucial decision making. His coworkers and even his supervisors do not find his coldness particularly likable, but he is highly valued by his employers for his efficiency.

Given the apparent risks of emotionality some people conclude that emotional awareness and responsiveness are handicaps. However in the long run, achieving high emotional literacy skills, and awareness of emotional information will lead to personal effectiveness and power even in our emotionally illiterate world. This is because a highly emotionally literate person will know how to control her feelings when necessary—when and how to hold them back or when and how to express them-- in most situations.

Of course there are situations where ruthless lack of empathy and emotional coldness are required; jobs, like contract killer, executive in charge of downsizing or certain military special forces. In these situations a high level of emotional awareness would make it impossible to perform effectively. Obviously a person aspiring to emotional literacy needs to avoid these types of activities.
THE VERBAL BARRIER

The emotions are generated deep in the primitive portions of our brain, while the awareness of emotions require that we utilize our more evolved brain--the neocortex--essential to language, abstract thinking and reasoning.

Mammals who have not developed the higher functions of speech, language, imitation, speaking, writing, planning and symbolic reasoning are not able to transcend the chaotic or primal level of feeling. Human beings whose neocortex makes those verbal skills possible are able, as a consequence, to develop higher levels of emotional awareness.

Awareness of emotions depends on the ability to speak about what we feel and why. The language of emotions elaborately deals with the exchange of strokes, with the identification of our and other people emotions and the clarification of their causes and with the expression of regret and desire for forgiveness. These topics of communication are foreign to most people who will have to learn about them in order to develop emotional literacy in their lives.

Crossing this linguistic barrier requires an environment with people that are friendly to emotional discourse. Once a person is able to talk about his emotions with fellow human beings he can develop an increasing awareness of his feelings.

Learning emotional literacy is, literally, like learning a new language. In fact, learning emotional literacy is like learning a dialect of English, as different from the English that we normally speak as, say, Ebonics.

Ebonics, a black people's dialect, uses English words but it is definitely different; different tones of voice, different combinations of words and many words not found in the dictionary. These are required to express the desired meanings. Likewise with emotionally literate language a different tone of voice is used, words are combined into strange sounding sentences and a number of neologisms are used in order to communicate the desired emotional content.

Emotionally literate expression may not make sense to the listener who might conclude that what is being said is nonsense. It would be easier to speak Ebonics among Ebonics-speakers and they will find each other and speak to each other with pleasure. Likewise, being able to speak in an emotionally literate language is a pleasant, safe and soothing experience in a world that is not hospitable to the emotions.

Let me now elaborate on the way we can develop a state of chaotic awareness into emotionally literate discourse.

**Differentiation.** As we discuss our emotions with others we begin to recognizing different emotions and their intensity as well as learning how to speak about them to others. At this stage we become aware of the differences between basic emotions like anger, love, shame, joy, or hatred. We also realize that any feeling can occur at
various intensities. Fear can vary from apprehension to terror. Anger can range from irritation to hatred. Love can be felt at many levels from affection to passion.

As we cross the verbal barrier (a virtual wall for some), we begin to recognize that we often have several feelings at once. Some of these feelings are strong and obvious, while others are weak and hidden. Some are brief while others are long-lasting. For example, when we are feeling overwhelmed by jealousy, we may realize that the main feeling is anger combined with weaker feelings of unrequited love, tinged by shame. Someone else might experience jealousy as feelings of fear combined with intense hate.

Let’s continue to pursue our troubled accountant, Lucas. When I asked him why he responded so strongly to his wife’s recriminations, he said,

„Because I was a little annoyed, I suppose.“

„How about sad?“ I asked.

„I guess so.... Yeah, sad too,“ he said with emphasis, „and afraid that I’ll lose control and retaliate and hurt her feelings. She is so thin-skinned.“

„How angry do you feel?“ I asked again.

„Not very angry, just annoyed.“

„But if you are not that angry, why would you lose control?“

„I suppose I am angry.“ He was quiet for a moment, during which I noticed his color redden. „Yeah, I guess I am.“

„Furious?“

There followed a long silence. By now Lucas’s face was very red. Turning to his wife, his voice full of guilt and apprehension, Lucas finally said, „Yeah, thinking it over, I would say that I do feel very strongly about it.“

I questioned Lucas further, making sure that I was not putting words in his mouth. As I helped him become aware of his emotions it turned out that Lucas felt intense, blinding anger about his wife’s accusations and was extremely afraid of „losing it“ and „blowing up at her.“ And when he thought about it, he also felt despondent and afraid. Quite a bit going on for someone who initially claimed to feel nothing.

**Causality.** As we begin to understand the exact nature of our feelings, we also begin to understand the causes of those feelings: the event that triggered our emotional response, why we feel strong pride or hate, whence our fear.

To illustrate, Peter began feeling jealous the night he noticed his girlfriend Jennifer laughing at their friend Michael’s jokes. At first he was unwilling to admit feeling jealous, even to himself, because he prided himself on being confident and secure.
But he caught himself being irritable with Jennifer and had to admit that he was probably jealous.

This highlights the inevitability of emotional interconnections between people. Some will disagree but we can cause feelings in others and they can cause feelings in us. We begin to discover the alchemy of emotions; how our emotional tendencies (to be thin-skinned, assertive, or jealous) combine with the emotional tendencies and behavior of others. Eventually we are able to investigate, and in most cases understand, why we feel what we feel.

In this case, Jennifer’s apparent flirtation with Michael made Peter jealous. Peter, feeling embarrassed, explained his jealousy to Jennifer. She told him she never meant to make him feel that. She explained that after a hard week at work she enjoyed a good laugh. Now that she was aware of Peter’s feelings of jealousy, she decided to make an effort to pay more attention to Peter while Michael entertained them.

**Empathy.** As we learn the different emotions that we have, the various intensities with which we feel them, and the reasons for them, and as our awareness of our own emotions becomes textured and subtle, we begin to perceive and intuit similar texture and subtlety in the emotions of those around us.

Empathy is a form of intuition specifically about emotions. The workings of empathy can at times feel like clairvoyance. When being empathic we don’t figure out or think about, see, or hear other people’s emotions; we just know, directly, what the other person is feeling. It has been suggested that empathy is actually a sixth sense with which we perceive emotional energies in the same manner in which the eye perceives light. If that is the case, then empathy takes place on an intuitive sense-channel, separate from the other five senses, that goes directly to our awareness.

Emotional illiteracy occurs when we fail, in our formative years, to adequately develop that sixth sense. The constant lying about and discounting of feelings that are commonplace to childhood experiences and the systematic refusal to acknowledge our intuitions result in the defeat of our intuitive sense.

Some people are born empaths with high sensitivity to emotions, and others are emotionally tone deaf, if you will. Most of us are somewhere in the middle, and all of us can learn or relearn empathic awareness.

There is the risk inherent in the empathic awareness. The empathic response is a complex event. We may or may not respond empathically to other people’s emotions and if we do may or may not be aware of our own response. The ideal relationship from this point of view is one in which both are empaths, aware of their emotions. Most difficult is the relationship between and empath and a xxxx in which one person reacts to emotions the other is not even aware of. This latter situation can be very unsettling and when chronic can be maddening for the empath.
Empathy, like all intuition, is imprecise and of little value until we develop ways of objectively confirming the accuracy of our perceptions. For example, returning to Peter and Jennifer’s situation, Jennifer had begun to suspect that Peter was becoming more and more uncomfortable around Michael. Her intuition told her, even though he denied it at first, that he felt jealous. She couldn’t understand why he would feel this way, since she was extremely affectionate and attentive toward him during their private time together. She thought that Peter’s jealousy might have to do with Michael’s good looks, and began to wonder if Peter was insecure about his appearance.

Jennifer had been reading about emotional literacy and learning some of the techniques, which she had described to Peter. When Jennifer decided to ask Peter if he was feeling jealous, Peter’s first impulse was to deny it. He thought his jealousy was childish and was embarrassed to admit to it.

„Be honest, please“ asked Jennifer, reassuring him she wouldn’t think less of him.

„All right, I do feel a little jealous,“ he admitted at last.

„But Michael isn’t especially attractive to me. I’m much more attracted to you."

„No, that’s not it. You’ve made it pretty clear how much you like me,“ he said smiling sheepishly. „But you know how tongue-tied I get sometimes. Michael is so at ease and funny, aren’t you kind of attracted to that?“

Jennifer thought a moment. „Well, I guess so. But you’re just as funny in your own way, when we’re alone. Anyway, it’s fun hanging out with someone like him, but you’re the person I want to be in a relationship with. There are always going to be other people we both know who have qualities we like but I am with you because I love you.“ She gave him a hug and they embraced happily for a moment.

But now there was something Peter needed to clear up. „Can I ask you a question about this?“

Jennifer agreed eagerly.

„I feel like you keep your distance from me when he’s around. Actually, I am afraid you lose interest in me when the three of us get together."

She was shocked. „Not at all!“ But thinking it over she realized why he might feel that way. „I guess I’ve always thought it’s rude to be affectionate with a partner in front of someone who’s single."

„I can see that.“ Peter nodded thoughtfully. She added, „but you may be right, perhaps I’ve gone too far. I think we could hold hands sometimes or sit closer together without making Michael feel bad. I’ll try to do that more. I just was being very careful to be considerate.“
Peter’s intuition that Jennifer was attracted to something about Michael was confirmed. Also confirmed was that she was avoiding contact with Peter when the three were together. But his fear that she was romantically interested in Michael, or that Michael had eclipsed him, turned out to be untrue. Instead, he was pleased to learn how much she wanted to fit in with his friends, and how hard she tried to be considerate of other people’s feelings. An important aspect of his intuition was validated, his fears allayed, and he discovered something new about Jennifer—her thoughtfulness towards his friends—which he found very lovable.

Peter had sometimes dismissed Jennifer’s declarations of love as exaggerations, but hearing her talk calmly about why she’d chosen to be with him, he suddenly felt more sure of her love. By following up her hunch about Peter’s jealousy, and by initiating a discussion with him, Jennifer was forging a stronger, more emotionally literate connection between herself and Peter. Her intuition proved correct, and that gave her a chance to change in a way that helped Peter feel better; just a sample of the many fruits of an emotionally literate dialogue.

We hone our awareness of other people’s emotions by asking questions; if the other person is unwilling to be honest and supply truthful feedback we cannot make progress. Honest feedback is the sole means of heightening one’s empathic intuitions. The process of truthful discussion and feedback greatly improves the accuracy of our subsequent empathic perceptions. Awareness of our own emotions is a prerequisite for empathy and we learn to become aware of the intensity of other people’s feelings and to understand why they occur, sometimes as clearly as we do our own. Eventually, as our emotional literacy improves, our empathic perceptions become more accurate and reliable. We learn to trust our feelings and perceptions, and to be more open about them. This transformation is achieved through continual formulation of our perceptions, gathering feedback to check them out, and correcting our misinterpretations.

It is important here to draw a distinction between empathy and sympathy. Sympathy is an intellectual process with which we can deduce and even visualize another person’s emotional state. That helps us understand and even predict how he or she might feel and act. However, sympathy is not an emotional but a mental process that stands in relation to empathy as a paint-by-the-numbers canvas stands to an artist’s rendering. We can fill in the proper spaces with the right colors or emotions and we will get a reasonable facsimile of the real thing without actually involving ourselves in the emotional process.

Empathy is quite different—it involves our own emotions so that we understand what others feel because we feel it in our hearts as well as visualize it in our minds. Sympathy is a minimal form of emotional literacy but it is not uncommon for people to be unable to empathize with certain emotions in other people. In that case, sympathy is clearly better than a total lack of awareness of other people’s feelings and emotions. But to progress to the next level of emotional awareness true empathy is required.
**Interactivity.** As I have mentioned being „merely“ an empathic person-an „empath“ if you will-has its disadvantages. The empath is keenly aware of a complex universe of emotional information not largely perceived by others, some of it painful, perhaps even unbearably so.

Knowing how others feel does not necessarily mean we know what to do about it. People’s emotional behavior seems to call for a response but a response may not be wanted, welcome, or possible. Being highly empathic in a largely emotionally illiterate world can literally drive a person mad; an empathic person needs to know what to do with his or her awareness.

Emotional interactivity requires knowing how people will respond to each other’s emotions and when that interaction might escalate for better or for worse. It means knowing people’s emotions well enough to know how one person will react to anger or fear or sadness or how another person will respond to love, sexuality, joy, or optimism. Emotional interactivity is based on the most sophisticated level of awareness, the ability to realize what you are feeling and what others are feeling, and to anticipate how emotions will interact. This further enables you to anticipate how two different people, given their usual emotional proclivities, will react in a given situation.

Emotions merge, fade, grow, and shrink in each other’s presence and over time. Interactive awareness has to do with understanding the way emotions, like chemicals, combine to create new substances that one could not have guessed at from examining the component parts. These combinations can be creative, inert, or explosive, as in the chemist’s laboratory. The ability to predict these reactions can come only from a great deal of accumulated experience or wisdom. The complicated awareness of how emotions combine with each other, within people, and between people is the highest level of emotional sophistication.

While this sounds very complex, a simple example of this wisdom at work is the way my friend David introduced his new love interest, Ramona, to his teenage daughter, Robyn, who tended to be shy and resentful of her father’s female friends. Knowing that a face-to-face meeting over dinner might be hard for Robyn, David instead decided that his new girlfriend should come along while he drove his daughter to another city to visit her mother. This gave Robyn a chance to observe him with his new partner while she sat in the backseat, safely out of sight. This way Robyn learned about her potential stepmother-to-be. She had a better chance to get to know and like Ramona than she could at a potentially difficult dinner, where she might be nervous about being in the limelight. David’s sense that the back seat drive was a better option than a dinner arose from his heightened awareness of emotional interactions.

Another more complicated example is John and Dawn, a couple who had been in a month-long conflict. John was angry because Dawn was spending more and more time at her new job, which was the first job she had ever had that really excited and fully challenged her. John was used to being the principal wage earner and was...
feeling inexplicable jealousy and envy. He had always been prone to emotional outbursts, and lately he felt dangerously close to losing his temper. John and Dawn had a good relationship of many years, and John knew that Dawn loved and trusted him. However, she was easily frightened by his displays of anger.

They had had a number of unproductive emotionally charged conversations, and Dawn was beginning to retreat emotionally from him. John was feeling increasingly at a loss. Brooding about what to do, John remembered the time he and Dawn had had a heated disagreement while dining with her sister Marsha. Marsha’s presence helped John control his temper, and Marsha had acted as a calm advocate for Dawn, which seemed to embolden Dawn to hold her own in the debate. John decided that it would be a good idea to invite Marsha over for Sunday brunch, explaining that he wanted her help to discuss Dawn’s work. He talked the idea over with Marsha and with her approval called Dawn. Marsha, Dawn and John agreed on a good time and after a pleasant meal John gently suggested that Marsha sit near Dawn while he told her how he had been feeling. John knew that if he let his feelings loose under less protected circumstances he might get angry and Dawn would feel overpowered. He might get her to cut back on her work, but not without creating serious emotional repercussions later.

Marsha was a good choice for a mediator because she liked both of them and was not scared of John. Her self-assured, calming influence gave John the confidence to speak out clearly and gave Dawn the strength to stand up to his demands without being intimidated.

On the other hand, if Dawn was a different sort of a person, not afraid to hear John out even if he got excited and raised his voice, the situation would be very different and would call for a different, perhaps more direct approach, that would not require bringing in Dawn’s sister to mediate. John was aware of his own feelings and tendencies and equally aware of Dawn’s. He knew from experience how their different styles were likely to interact, namely, that he would raise his voice in excitement, and she would likely comply but later be unhappy and irritable. He took steps to prevent the problems that would result if he acted impulsively. This kind of deliberate analysis of the emotional landscape of a relationship is the hallmark of emotionally literate interactivity.

Interactivity is a much-used concept in the communication age. In that context, it refers to intelligent interaction instead of passive acceptance. The same is true of emotional interactivity. Interactive awareness enables us to register the emotions within and around us, and to begin to see how they can be molded to creative ends, instead of going unnoticed and being allowed to run out of control. We can use our emotional awareness to have easier, more positive and productive interactions. Interactivity empowers empaths to use their awareness to navigate powerful emotional situations in a skillful way. Interactivity is the link between emotional awareness, which is the subject of this chapter, and the larger topic of emotional literacy, the subject of this book.
I have added this category of as yet unknown level of emotional awareness to indicate that it is quite possible that there is a higher aspect of emotional awareness that I am not aware of. Perhaps there is awareness of the emotions of animals or other living things which for most people are beyond the pale. Perhaps you, dear reader, are privy to such awareness. If that is the case I would be thankful if you communicated it to me via my web site: www.emotional-literacy.com

BEYOND AWARENESS

Neo-cortical Adult functions in addition to language and symbolic thinking are also applied to the modulation and even modification of the lower brains’ functions. Rational control of the procreative, aggressive, protective and affiliative drives are one of the byproducts of human neo-cortical evolution. However as Joseph LeDoux point out in The Emotional Brain there is a distinct asymmetry in the way these two portions of the brain affect each other, namely that the reptilian and limbic brain have a far greater influence upon the neocortical brain than vice versa „making it possible for emotional arousal to dominate and control thinking.“ „Although thoughts can easily trigger emotions we are not very effective at turning emotions off."

Emotional Literacy seeks to reverse that order of things by equalizing the influence of the neocortex and the lower brain and vice versa. Awareness is an essential aspect of personal power, but, as we have seen, it is not sufficient by itself to produce the changes that emotional literacy requires. As a person’s emotional awareness expands he is able to learn the additional skills of emotional regulation necessary to act in an increasingly emotionally literate way. Learning awareness and literacy are the essential lessons of Part II (chapters 4 to 8) of this book.

SUMMARY

The Emotional Awareness Scale

Awareness is an essential part of Emotional Literacy. You can question yourself on an emotional awareness scale and see where you stand.

The scale, from lowest to highest awareness, is as follows:

Numbness: You haven’t any awareness of your feelings.

Physical sensations: s chaotic emotions but you don’t know what they are. You can’t discuss them or understand them.

Differentiation: By crossing the verbal barrier and talking about your feelings you learn to differentiate between anger, love, shame, joy, or hatred.

Causality: You can not only tell emotions apart, you also understand what causes them.
**Empathy:** You are aware of other people’s emotions.

**Interactivity:** You are sensitive to the ebb and flow of emotions around you and how they interact.
CHAPTER 3.

TRAINING TO BE EMOTIONALLY LITERATE

You don’t have to live in a state of emotional numbness, nor are you doomed to go through life feeling dejected, irritable, anxious, tortured by impulses or out of control emotionally. And if you are an openly responsive empath, you don’t need to be enslaved by other people’s feelings. With a supportive environment and the transactional techniques outlined in this book, you can turn your emotions from being a drain to a source of power.

Research shows you can heal the emotional chaos of even extreme trauma in an environment that lets you express your strong feelings. In an emotionally literate environment you can go right to the heart of your problem and slowly but surely deal with it’s overwhelming emotions. The feelings that result from emotional trauma, including flashbacks, nightmares, anxiety attacks, and depression will lessen in time or even vanish when discussed with sympathetic friends, family, counselors, or therapy group members. Not only that, but you will discover a new emotional self but your relationships with others will be transformed.

It might seem that pursuing your emotional self is a fool-hardy adventure in a world such as ours. Those people around you who keep their strong feelings out of sight seem to have an advantage—they can stay the course when others are swamped by feelings. But in the long run, a truly productive life requires that we include emotional information in our choices. From a routine discussion of the news over breakfast to a critical decision such as deciding to get married, you vitally need emotional knowledge for a well-rounded, effective approach to life.

THE APPEAL OF AN EMOTIONALLY LITERATE LIFE

Few things are as exciting as the rediscovery or refinement of our emotional selves. It is this excitement that fuels people’s interest in emotional literacy workshops and training. When people glimpse the implications of an emotionally literate life they are often struck by its potential beauty. This drives some people to become emotional warriors in a crusade against emotional illiteracy.

For instance a recently widowed grandmother of fifty five who took one of my workshops in Germany wrote me as follows:

„Since I was a child I have known that life can be lived differently and I always had the vague idea that it had to do with honesty about feelings and no compromise about what I want, together with a strong love of people. I have tried to love people, I love my daughters and my grandchildren, but I see now that love is not enough. It can go very wrong, as in my
marriage. From now on I will be a crusader for emotional honesty. Nothing less will do. Thanks for showing me the way.”

This woman has set her goal very high. She can reach it, not all at once, but over time. The key is to work systematically. At the end of this chapter I briefly describe the three training stages I have developed to teach emotional literacy: opening the heart, surveying the emotional landscape, and taking responsibility.

THE TRAINING PROCESS

But first, let’s take a look at the process that this training follows. It is possible to begin emotional literacy training by paying attention to any of the emotions but over the years I have found that the most effective gateway through our emotional barriers is the expression our loving nature. Emotional literacy training begins and ends with the heart.

In my work with couples women often complain that the man does not love them or doesn't love them enough, that he does not express his loving feelings, or that he gladly takes affection but doesn't give it. (See Hogie Wyckoff's article “The stroke economy in Women's scripts” 24) To be sure, there are always a few men who simply don’t love their wives (or partners). But more often than not the men do love them but suffer from an inability to express their love convincingly. These men often wonder, eventually, why it is that they can’t be more loving in their actions. Women make this complaint often about men, but men can have the same grievance about women—that they are cold and don't show affection. This disability to show love is one example of emotional numbness. Emotional numbness is by no means exclusive to men though research shows that they are in the whole less emotional.25 But no matter which sex is involved, the solution is the same: Loosen the fetters upon your heart.

Let me give an example: Jack and Gina came to my office and were very upset. After a long courtship and a year and a half of blissful marriage, things were falling apart. They were fighting about “everything,” and their fights were getting so bad that their relationship seemed destined to end in disaster.

In a very brief preliminary discussion I could tell that they were still in love. They had always been unable to deal effectively with certain emotional issues. But these issues having to do with sex and money were now piling up between them. I could have spent quite a bit of time with questions about their childhood or by trying to mediate their arguments, but instead, because I could see that there was a lot of good emotional capital between them, I suggested that they start talking about the good things in each other that made them fall in love in the first place.

This calmed them down and got them back onto common ground. Soon they were speaking civilly to each other and their feelings of love were reawakened as they remembered the “good old days” of their relationship. In essence, they had reopened their hearts to each other. Over the next month, I had them explore their emotional
makeup. Using emotional literacy training transactions, I asked them to talk about their feelings for each other, revealing their anger, their deepest fears, and their greatest hopes.

By the time they finished exploring each other’s, hereto hidden emotional landscape, they had a new understanding and appreciation for one another. With this new understanding they were now in a position to recognize how they had damaged their relationship with a series of hurtful missteps that needed to be corrected. Now they were ready to accept responsibility for their actions. Painfully they admitted their wrongdoings and accepted each other’s apologies. This was difficult but brought them great relief, often mixed with tears of joy and hope. Their mutual love had returned and their relationship was strengthened. The above discussion, in a nutshell, shows the process behind this program. Following is a discussion of each of the three steps in the training process I mentioned earlier:

1. **Opening the heart**: This comes first because the heart is the virtual seat of our emotions. It is in our hearts that we feel good when we are happy, in love, or joyful. It is here that we feel bad when we are sad, angry, and heartbroken. So I start by freeing the center of our feelings from the restrictive impulses and influences that keep us from showing love for one another.

2. **Surveying the emotional landscape**: Once the basic heart-opening groundwork is done, you can look around and take note of the emotional terrain in which you live. You can learn to know just what you are feeling, how strongly, and why. You become aware of the ebb and flow of your emotions. With your loving feelings as a secure base you note the emotions being experienced by others and see how their feelings are affected by your actions. You develop empathy. You begin to understand how all the emotions interact and sometimes create feelings that can flood over us and others. In short, you become more aware of and wiser about your own feelings and those of people around you.

3. **Taking responsibility**: People make mistakes in their relationships, little ones and big ones. When you make a damaging mistake you need to apologize and take responsibility for your actions. It also stands to reason that you should make amends and correct your behavior so the mistake won’t happen again. Very few people are emotionally skilled enough to apologize sincerely, and without any defensiveness.

Unfortunately, most people are loath to admit, even to themselves, that they have done something wrong. If they can admit it to themselves, they have trouble admitting it to others. Others apologize freely and repeatedly but never do anything to change their behavior, so their apologies are meaningless. Taking responsibility for our actions and correcting our behavior is the final phase of emotional literacy training.
AN ENERGIZING PROCESS

What I have described may seem like a lot of work. You may think the process will drain you. However, at the end of the day it will, in fact, energize you. We squander huge stocks of emotional energy when we block the expression of our emotions. Whether it's keeping silent about a shameful trauma, holding in our affectionate enthusiasm so as not to embarrass ourselves, or locking away a painful memory, we waste shocking amounts of energy hiding and repressing our feelings. Letting go of these feelings not only releases the power of our emotions, it also gives us back the energy we wasted keeping them pushed down. And letting others express their emotions brings them closer to us energizing both parties with love and affection. That’s why those who learn these lessons report such dramatic energy-enhancing effects.

It’s an exciting prospect, isn’t it? But we shouldn’t rush forward blindly; it’s best to go about it in a thoughtful and systematic way. I’ll show you just how to do this using clearly explained, step-by-step, transactional exercises.

STRATEGIES OF EMOTIONAL LITERACY TRAINING

If you practice the three emotional strategies discussed in this book: opening the heart, surveying the emotional landscape, and taking responsibility, you will see dramatic changes in your emotional awareness, attitude, and effectiveness. In particular, you will learn:

✦ How to know what you want and what you feel; how to be truthful about your emotions; how to pursue fulfillment of your emotional needs.

✦ How to manage your emotions creatively; when to hold back and when to express your feelings.

✦ How to deal with emotional numbness or turmoil.

✦ How to apply your knowledge of emotions at work, at home, in school, in social groups, and “on the street” to improve and deepen your relationships and forge long-lasting, honest connections with people.

✦ How to practice a love-centered approach to personal power in a society that is moving in the direction of mistrust, loneliness, anxiety and depression.

WHERE TO START

What follows are the three stages, each made up of four steps of emotional literacy training. This set of emotionally literate transactions is arranged in order of difficulty. You may find that you already have some skills with transactions 3 or 4 and want to start with transaction 5. Or, you may feel confident with all fifteen but need to fine tune your skills. But it will be useful to understand all the components of
emotional literacy training before you can begin to practice it effectively. If you don’t know where you are going, it will be more difficult to find your way.

The stages and transactions of this process are like a road map to emotional transformation. Each step is a specific, emotionally literate transaction. As you learn each transaction and practice it in your everyday life it will teach you the elements of an emotionally literate communication and emotional style. Some of these transactions will be familiar to you, some will seem outlandish. Some of the will be easy some extremely difficult. The transactions early in the list are generally easier than the ones toward the end. Here are the transactions and stages that will be covered in detail in the chapters ahead:

**TRAINING TO BE EMOTIONALLY LITERATE**

1. Asking for permission.

Stage One: Opening the Heart

5. Giving Strokes
6. Asking for Strokes
7. Accepting Strokes
8. Rejecting Strokes
9. Giving Ourselves Strokes

Stage Two: Surveying the Emotional Landscape

10. Action/Feeling Statements
11. Accepting an Action/Feeling Statement
12. Revealing Our Intuitive Hunches
13. Validating an Intuitive Hunch

Stage Three: Taking Responsibility

14. Apologizing for Our Mistakes
15. Accepting Apologies
16. Rejecting Apologies
17. Asking for Forgiveness
18. Granting Forgiveness
19. Denying Forgiveness
SUMMARY

Training to Be Emotionally Literate

You don’t have to go through life emotionally numb or tyrannized by your emotions. In the right environment, with supportive people, you can learn a more satisfying emotional existence.

You’ll find the quest for emotional literacy exciting and satisfying. The process will energize you as you experience the power of your emotions and as you stop wasting energy to repress or hide them. To do so, you must practice with others who share your emotional goals.

*Opening the heart:* With supportive people and friends, you take part in simple acts of mutual affection.

*Surveying the emotional landscape:* You focus on the ebb and flow of your own emotions and those of the people around you. Listening with an open heart you strive to understand emotions and their reasons.

*Taking responsibility:* You admit that with minor or major mistakes you have hurt people in your life. You apologize and make amends.
Book Two:

Emotional Literacy Training
CHAPTER 4.

OPENING THE HEART

An open heart is the foundation of emotional literacy and a pre-requisite for the next two stages of emotional literacy training: Surveying the Emotional Landscape and Taking Responsibility. In this, the heart-opening portion of the training we apply the findings of the original Stroke City exercise, namely that by the simple act of exchanging positive strokes in a safe environment we can cultivate our inborn loving capacities. That is why the training starts here; by learning how to give and take affection, or in plain English by learning to love.

THE POWER OF STROKES

Scientific evidence strongly suggests that to maintain emotional and physical health we need strokes and have to know how to procure them. The undeniable evidence is that love and intimacy affect health and recovery from illness. This findings have been elaborated by Dean Ornish MD in *Love and Survival. The Scientific Basis for the Healing Power of Intimacy.* He writes:

"...love and intimacy are at the root of what makes us sick and what makes us well... I am not aware of any factor in medicine -- not diet, not smoking, not stress, not genetics, not drugs, not surgery—that has greater impact on our quality of life, incidence of illness and premature death from all causes."

The procurement of strokes is the motivation for interaction. People seek love, love is exchanged transactionally, through strokes. Strokes can be physical or verbal. Physical strokes are any form of touch: hugs, kisses, caresses, backrubs, holding hands or being held. Verbal strokes are statements that acknowledge some feature of another person in a positive way. Verbal strokes can be about the person’s looks, clothing, intelligence, generosity, creativity, emotional literacy, kindness, integrity, work ethic, practical skills, dignity, leadership ability, artistic talent, sexual responsiveness or prowess, honesty, playfulness, practical wisdom, elegance, tact, or any other attribute the person possesses. Listening carefully as someone speaks, or giving someone you love a bunch of beautiful flowers can be a powerful form of stroking as well; “action strokes” if you will.

Marcel and Carrey are a good example of how important action strokes can be. Marcel is a very busy teacher. He has a full teaching schedule and a great deal of committee work. He brings work home from school and is always busy.

Marcel is not very good at giving verbal strokes, but Carrey his wife has accepted this shortcoming and his busy lifestyle because he is very good at giving her action strokes. He makes sure that when she needs to talk to him he pulls himself away
from his work and listens with complete attention. He brings her breakfast in bed on weekends and he buys her little surprise presents. In short, he is constantly showing her affection with his actions in addition to the physical strokes they exchange whenever time permits. Even though Carrey would like to have longer conversations and more quality time with Marcel, she gives him action strokes just by being there with a loving attitude and supporting him in his work.

They both feel stroked, even though they exchange few verbal strokes and would like more. They have, for the time being, adjusted to the situation.

Another example of actions strokes are Todd and Louis, two lifelong friends who exchange strokes almost exclusively at the action level. They get together regularly, talk about sports and cars, go fishing or have a beer or two. There is no question of their mutual affection and respect, and yet they never exchange physical strokes, and exchange verbal strokes only by complimenting each others’ truck or prize catch. Both men get strokes they need from each other’s friendship. Their wonderful friendship could be further improved if they opened their hearts more and learned to give each other verbal and even physical strokes, but they are both well satisfied with each other.

Strokes can vary in their intensity or in the kind of reaction they cause. Some strokes are “superstrokes” because they are especially wanted. One teenager I knew longed to hear that he was good-looking. It took years for him to ask the question of someone and when he finally did he was lucky to receive a major boost in self-confidence. A superstroke can also be a stroke that comes from a special person, like a revered teacher, our spouse or a person we have a crush on.

The attributes that receive positive comment are not always obvious or expected. We learn about ourselves from the strokes we get. For example, Jane has asked David to give her some strokes about something other than her looks. Jane is surprised when he tells her, “I envy the way you get so emotional. I wish I felt as sure about what I feel as you do. I like it that you have such strong emotions.” Jane had assumed that her tendency to cry at movies or during arguments was annoying. She learned something about herself and was surprised (and pleased) to find that David admired her for this sometimes dubiously positive ability to show her emotions.

On the other hand, there are negative strokes. These can be obviously insults, such as “Why can’t you do anything right?” or subtle, hurtful remarks couched as jokes. Sometimes negative strokes can come disguised as compliments when they are based on a comparison between two people. For example, Jean’s mother frequently said to her, “You have all the looks in the family, and your sister Sara has all of the brains.” A statement like this was noxious to both of the girls, who came to resent their mother for pigeonholing them, and each other as well. It took Jean years to realize that they were both good looking and smart and that their mother had badly confused them with her devious compliments. Her sister Sara still hasn’t gotten over believing that she is ugly. Another example of a stroke that could feel good but be toxic would be a comparison such as, “You are my most loyal friend.” Again, this
might seem like a positive stroke, but it is actually harmful, because it denigrates the person’ all other friends. Far better would be to say something like: „I appreciate your loyalty. It’s pure as gold.”

Sometimes a stroke that we actually want can be delivered too strongly, making it unpleasant. An affectionate grandmother who smothers her grandchildren with wet kisses or a spouse who showers more physical attention to his wife than she may want at times are both examples of good strokes gone awry.

Finally, strokes are sometimes given insincerely. These strokes are supposed to feel good but rarely do. They are sometimes called „plastic fuzzies“ (as opposed to „warm fuzzies.) You may want to read The Warm Fuzzy Tale 27, my fairy tale about „warm fuzzies“ and „cold pricklies“ that makes these distinctions perfectly clear. (See Appendix A) Negative strokes are toxic even though they feed our hunger for recognition and we do better with them than with no strokes at all.

TROUBLE IN STROKE CITY

Our basic nature cries out for abundant strokes. Unfortunately, positive strokes don’t always flow freely, even among people who love one another. It should be simple and pleasurable both to give and to get them. But when most of us try to pass strokes back and forth, we fumble. This vexing problem was exemplified by one of my clients, Thomas, who found that whenever he tried to say something loving to his wife he felt as if he were being choked by an invisible hand. Though he knew what he wanted to say, he literally couldn’t get the words out. On one occasion, when confronted by his wife’s frequent question, „Do you love me?“ he did manage to force the words from his mouth. But all he could do was utter a barely understandable, froglike croak: „Ighh ghhluv ghuu.“

Fortunately, his wife had a rich sense of humor, and much to his relief, burst out laughing.

„What?“ she asked.

„I love you, I love you,“ he replied sheepishly, undercutting the powerful message by his hurried, embarrassed tone of voice. This farcical example of a common problem shows the fear and even physical difficulty we run into when we try to speak about our loving emotions.

People’s evasions take many forms. „You know I love you,“ they may say. Or, „How many times do I have to tell you that I love you?“ Or, „Would I be here if I didn’t love you?“ Sometimes the sentiment is ruined just by the tone of voice-ironic, irritated, or dismissive: „Yes, dear, of course I love you.“ In any case, the loving stroke that one partner wanted and the other actually had was not truly delivered. This occurs commonly because few of us are truly free to love and to speak of love openly. Even though we talk and listen to talk about love constantly, we are inhibited about
giving, asking for, or accepting strokes. We are especially uptight about giving strokes to ourselves. What restricts us?

Most of us follow unwritten rules about the exchange of strokes. When we break these rules, we are likely to experience disapproval or even harassment. If you warmly hug a loved one on a busy sidewalk, chances are that some people will look away uncomfortably. If you are over a certain age and kiss or cuddle each other on a bus, other passengers may look embarrassed or frown. If you call your wife or husband from your office and say, „I love you,“ you open yourself up to remarks from the person at the next desk. But these prohibitions don’t come only from outsiders who disapprove. They are also severely enforced inside each of us by our inner Critical Parent.

What are the unwritten rules about giving and taking strokes? Where do they come from? I first became aware of the prohibitions placed on stroking at one of Eric Berne’s weekly meetings. At these meetings, we would try different „psychological experiments“ as a form of recreation after our „scientific“ meeting. On one occasion, I suggested we try one of the „games“ played at that time by members of Synanon, a drug-treatment organization. In this game, group members would go at each other with savage criticism. They did this because they believed that the drug addict’s character required that type of tough approach for change to happen.

Following Synanon’s example we went at it with glee, and the nasty comments—some offered supposedly in jest—flowed freely. I found the experiment quite disturbing. My feelings had been hurt by some of the things said about me, but of course I did not tell the others of my distress. I would have been too embarrassed to admit how badly I’d been hurt, and how much I wanted the affection and respect of the group. Instead, I proposed that the next week we do just the opposite of what we had done and say positive, loving things about each other.

Everyone agreed. But at the next meeting, no one could think of much to say. Though we eventually muddled through, it was clear that producing positive strokes was hard, while producing negative ones was easy. Not only were people inhibited about giving strokes, I discovered, but also about asking for them or even accepting them. Giving oneself strokes was definitely taboo.

Years later, Diana, a group therapy member, helped me see this problem even more clearly. I noticed one afternoon that she seemed uneasy when someone in the group offered her a compliment. I asked her about her uneasiness.

„When Robert said something about me being pretty“, she explained, „I was afraid that other people in the group might be thinking, ‘I don’t think so.’ That if I smiled too much, or was moved, they would think I looked needy and pathetic and pity me.“

I thought it would be interesting if I suggested that, as an experiment, that she ask Robert to give her the stroke again. „But it would seem so pathetic and needy,“ she insisted, squirming in her chair.
Emboldened I suggested, "Well, then, how about giving yourself the same stroke? Would you be willing to tell yourself that you are pretty?"

This was a shocking idea and by now, there were tears in her eyes. I feared that I had made her cry and asked if I had been too demanding. I asked her why she was crying and she said that it was Robert’s compliment had shaken her up. She wanted to believe him and to thank him, but was terrified of allowing herself to look pleased. I asked her to reflect on why she might be feeling this way. After thinking about it, she remembered that when she was in grammar school and high school, the unpopular kids were always most likely to be made fun of when they acted pleased with themselves. Seeing this over and over had taught her to be afraid to accept strokes, especially a stroke that she really wanted because that might cause her to become emotional in public and therefore, in her mind, make her seem ridiculous. Asking for strokes or giving herself strokes frightened her even more.

Diana had no trouble giving strokes, but she had severe inhibitions against accepting them, asking for them, or giving them to herself. Unfortunately, Diana was not unusual. Some of us reject any strokes that are given to us. Many of us, like Thomas, choke up when we try to deliver them. All of these reactions keep us from being close to people.

THE STROKE ECONOMY AND ITS RULES

Have you ever felt a great desire to tell someone that you liked or loved him or her and found yourself unable to do so? Or have you found yourself wondering if a friend, family member, lover, or spouse really loves or likes you and, if so, in what way and for what reasons? Have you thought of coming right out and asking, only to dismiss the idea? Do you put yourself down giving yourself negative strokes as a way to fish for positive strokes, hoping that somebody will contradict you? All of these are the result of our submission to the rules of the Stroke Economy.

The Stroke Economy is a set of rules enforced by people around us but even more importantly by our own Critical Parent, that critical voice we hear inside that keeps us from giving and accepting positive strokes. The Stroke Economy rules that the Critical Parent would have us live by are these:

✦ Don’t give strokes you want to give.
✦ Don’t ask for strokes you want.
✦ Don’t accept strokes you want.
✦ Don’t reject strokes you don’t want.
✦ Don’t give yourself strokes.
WHY PEOPLE ACCEPT NEGATIVE STROKES

When all the people in a social group, to a certain extent, follow the dictates of the stroke economy the quantity and quality of strokes exchanged is dramatically reduced. People will become stroke-starved. One very important and damaging side effect of this is that stroke-hungry people begin to accept or even seek negative strokes because they can’t get positive ones. In the same way that people dying of hunger or thirst will eat rotten food and drink polluted water, people will also accept and take in negative strokes when they get sufficiently stroke hungry. But negative strokes, like salt water and rotten food make people sick. Getting healthy, life affirming strokes is a major human predicament and pursuit.

As I have said before, one of the most important discoveries I made in the twenty years that I have been teaching emotional literacy is that by systematically breaking the rules of the Stroke Economy, and providing people with a steady diet of positive strokes, people’s hearts will automatically open. They will experience loving feelings they have not experienced before and the effect will spread out from them to their families and friends. I have seen many people (myself among them) develop their loving capacities over time simply by giving strokes, asking for strokes, accepting the strokes they want, rejecting the ones they don’t want, and giving themselves strokes.

THE EMOTIONAL LITERACY TRAINING PROGRAM

Let me now introduce step by step the emotionally literate transactions which if used when appropriate over a period of time will effectively increase your emotional literacy:

The first transaction of Opening the Heart is giving strokes, but before you start opening your heart, let me introduce an even more important transaction: asking for permission.

EMOTIONALLY LITERATE TRANSACTION #0.
Ask for permission

I number this transaction „zero” because it a special transaction which should always be used preceding any of the others. Why? Because any emotional communication can be a daunting experience. It is not uncommon in emotional literacy training to see people cry when they are given a much-desired stroke, asked a particular question, or given a needed apology. Asking the other person’s permission when about to speak about strokes or any other emotional issues:

✦ Gives a warning that a difficult communication is coming and provides an opportunity to prepare and be ready to listen.
Allows a choice about dealing with the issue at this time (he may have a splitting headache or a big exam in the morning);

When we follow this approach, we are ensuring that our statements will fall on fertile soil and will generate productive responses. By asking for permission every time we are about to engage in an emotion-laden transaction we are avoiding possible shock, defensiveness, fear, and even anger in the other person.

Most important, though, the recipient has to be given a genuine choice. We need to be willing to accept that the timing of our statement might not be particularly good and, if so, be ready to wait for a better moment. By going slow and easy, we prepare ourselves and the other person for the strong emotional response that might occur.

The most important first step toward learning emotional literacy is finding one or more persons to learn it with. Once you have found a person who is interested in an affectionate, thoughtful dialogue and you are planning to give a stroke, or address an emotional issue, give him or her an idea of what you are about to say with a comment like:

„Can I tell you something I like about you?“

„I would like to talk about a feeling I had when we talked the other night,“

„I have been wanting to apologize to you for something I said a while ago.“

„May I tell you what my favorite thing about you is?“

„I have been feeling upset lately. May I explain?“

„There is something going on between us that I don’t like. Are you interested in talking about it?“

Many people find these preambles highly awkward. That is because what needs to be done is unusual and sometimes seems unnatural and likely to be ridiculed as excessively Califonia-ish. Emotional discourse can be dismissed as „psychobabble“ or laughed at by people who are uncomfortable with their emotions. Nonetheless, these are important methods that produce the changes we are trying to make. Although asking permission to make any kind of emotion-laden statement might seem odd, practice will remove this strangeness over time and will improve your interactions.

EMOTIONALLY LITERATE TRANSACTION #1:
Giving Strokes; offering honest and truthful statements of affection

Throughout this book the theme of honesty will come up, over and over again. The fact is that heart-based emotional literacy cannot develop in an environment of lies or subtle dishonesty. In order for people to feel the trust and confidence in each other needed to acquire the skills that I teach here, they have to make a commit-
ment to truthfulness and honesty. (See Notes for Philosophers; Lying and Truthfulness.)

Giving strokes is the first opportunity to practice the all-important principle of truthfulness. A stroke has to be honest, not manufactured. Anything else will be confusing and counterproductive. As our hearts open, so do our intuitive powers. It is confusing to our intuition to receive a stroke that is presented as heartfelt and sincere but instead (at the intuitive level) feels phony and unreal. When we decide to give a stroke we must make sure that it is authentic. For some people honesty is easy because they know how they truly feel. For others, that is where the learning begins.

For instance, Daphne was taught early in life that being nice and saying nice things to people was important even if that was not the way she felt. After years of saying nice things and never considering their truth, Daphne doesn't really know how she feels about people or what it is that she likes or doesn't like about them. Because of that, she has to concentrate to become aware of her true feelings. Sometimes, when she is being truthful with herself, she realizes that she has nothing complimentary to say. When that happens, she cannot honestly give a verbal stroke. At such times her Critical Parent makes her feel very guilty, and she reverts to the values she was raised with and invents a stroke, whether she feels it or not.

By doing this, she misses seeing that simply listening to people, touching them lightly, or smiling can be a stroke as well; an action stroke, as I have explained. Daphne could sit back and tune in to how she feels and resist the nagging of her Critical Parent who urges her to „Say something nice, stupid!“ Unless she is true to herself, she cannot be true to others. And others will intuit when she is not telling the truth and treat her with the hidden suspicion, dismissing her as a person.

**STROKE ENEMY #1; The Critical parent**

The main problem in giving strokes is our Critical Parent, who acts like an emotional prison guard giving us discouraging messages that keep us from getting in touch with our true feelings. Here are some of the messages our Critical Parent whispers or shouts that stop us from giving strokes:

✦ If the stroke is not wanted, you will look foolish.

✦ The stroke I have is inappropriate, badly worded, and clumsy. If I say it, I will only make a fool of myself.

✦ It will seem like a sexual advance.

✦ It will just seem like insincere politeness anyway, so why take the risk?

✦ Someone will think you are needy and desperate for friendship.
If I get overemotional, I will just make everyone feel awkward, and then I might really get upset.

The Critical Parent concocts complicated damning scenarios. For example, „If I tell my sister that I really miss her, I might start crying. Then she'll be embarrassed, I'll be embarrassed, and we'll both feel stupid and everyone will think that we are from a stupid family.“ Or if I ask my friend if he loves me he might think that I am gay and panic and avoid me for ever.” Notice, however, that all these scenarios end up in the same way: Not OK, rejected, alone, loveless and excluded from the tribe, group or family.

By giving strokes in spite of these Critical Parent injunctions and we see the appreciation for our strokes we begin to get strokes back and we feed our hunger for strokes. We realize how wrong the Stroke Economy rules really are. When that happens, the voice of the Critical Parent gradually loses its power to inhibit us.

For example, Melanie is shy about giving strokes. This is another way of saying that her Critical Parent doesn't want her to give strokes. She wishes she could be more generous; she would like to give some strokes to her friend, Janelle, who is moving away to New York. Overcoming her Critical Parent who enjoins her to be cautious she tells Janelle that she thinks her new short hairstyle really becomes her.

„I love it. You should keep it like that!“ Melanie says enthusiastically.

Janelle laughs nervously and says „Oh I think its too short.”

„Seriously, it's perfect for you,” Melanie adds, chastened.

Still no response. Having stuck her neck out to give a sincere stroke, Melanie is sad and disappointed. Her Critical Parent tells her that Janelle hated the stroke, that it was inappropriate and may have been construed as a sexual advance. Later, after rejecting her Critical Parent’s harassment and thinking about it with her Adult ego state, she realizes that she gave that stroke quite abruptly without preparing her for her unusual enthusiasm. Maybe Janelle is uneasy about her appearance and doesn't quite believe Melanie’s flattering remarks.

She resolves to ask for permission the next time. The next time they talk Janelle tells a very funny joke.

„You know something?“ Melanie says, still laughing.

„What?“ Janelle asks, worried.

„May I tell you something I like about you?“

„Okay.“ Janelle says, cautiously.
„I really like your sense of humor. At least we can still laugh together on the phone after you move."

Janelle smiles, looking a little sad. Ignoring the sadness Melanie is encouraged; finally she has hit on a stroke that Janelle is able to respond to.

Emboldened by her success, Melanie addresses Janelle again. „May I tell you something else?“ After Janelle’s silent agreement Melanie says: „You know, you’re like a sister to me; I’m going to miss you so much!“

Now Janelle doesn’t know what to say. She smiles nervously, then looks serious. She promises to call as soon as she arrives in New York. Again, Melanie is disappointed. What went wrong? Does Janelle feel guilty for leaving? Do emotional goodbyes make her self-conscious? Her Critical Parent pitches in with: „You never leave well enough alone. You are always pushing for more. You’re spoil every situation with your greediness."

Next day Melanie goes out and buys a card for Janelle. She writes: „Dear Janelle, I had the feeling last night that when I said you were like a sister to me and I’ll miss you, I made you uncomfortable. I’m not sure how you took what I said, but all that’s important to me is that I let you know what a great time I always have with you, and how smart and funny I think you are. Best wishes in your new home.

To Melanie’s delight Janelle wrote her a postcard two weeks later:


By starting out slowly, learning to ask for permission, being honest with her feelings of affection and refusing to go along with her Critical Parent and Janelle’s, Melanie was gradually learning the fine art of exchanging strokes. She was desensitizing herself to the initial fear and awkwardness which her Critical Parent always exploited and working her way up from simple to more profound expressions of positive, loving emotions. Over time both she and Janelle became freer in their ability to give and receive affection. This happened because Melanie decided that she wanted to give Janelle strokes and was not dissuaded by either her own Critical Parent or Janelle’s initial inability to receive them. With practice, Melanie will find giving and accepting strokes easier and easier.

**THE POETRY OF STROKES**

A stroke should always aspire to be a love poem. Brief and shy perhaps, or full throated and showy, one word or a long paragraph, but from the heart and always hopeful and sincere. Even if it is an action stroke without words or physical contact, a stroke works because it is an act of kindness and love extended to another person.
To open up our hearts we need to examine our lives and ask ourselves how many times in a day we actually perform this basic function of human nature; expressing love to another person; almost imperceptibly, passionately or somewhere in between, whether within our family, at work or on the street. And if we discover, as is often the case, that we are depriving others of our love, we must resolve to do something about it and then go ahead and do it.

**EMOTIONALLY LITERATE TRANSACTION # 2:**
**Asking for Strokes: Requesting the affection that we need.**

It’s nice to get strokes, but sometimes they aren’t available or the ones that are available are not the ones we want. We can spend years silently and timidly waiting to learn whether the people in our lives think we are smart, creative, good-looking, or kind. We try to guess if they find these positive qualities in us. We seldom if ever simply ask. We have become so obedient to the Critical Parent that the idea doesn’t even occur to us. But there are times when we need to ask for strokes. At that point we need to decide what to ask for and from whom.

Asking for strokes is riskier than giving them. We can never be completely sure that the strokes we want are going to come our way. The other person may not honestly be able to tell us what we would like to hear. It is therefore more hazardous to ask for a specific stroke („Do you like the way I sing?“ or „Will you give me a hug?“) than to ask for any stroke a person may have, physical or verbal. The risk of the latter request is that we might get a stroke we don’t want. The reality however is that in most situations, with most people, when we ask, we can get what we need.

For example: „Hi, Daphne. I’m having a really bad day. I feel embarrassed saying this, but I could really use some moral support about my writing. Do you have any strokes that you can give me?“ Such conversations are normally complicated, made almost impossible because people expect each other to lie out of politeness. That’s why it’s so important to find good friends, or a lover or spouse, someone who will be honest and gentle. With someone like that you can ask:

„I just bought these pants. Do you like them? Do you think that I look good in them?“

Or: „I wrote a letter to the editor of the Times. Would you read it and tell me if you like it?“

Or: „I just had a tough conversation with my teenager. I’m feeling unsure about being a good father. You’ve seen how I am with my daughter, can you give me some strokes about my parenting?“

Or: „I looked at myself in the mirror this morning and I can see some new wrinkles in my face. I’m afraid I’m becoming old and ugly. Can you tell me something you like about my face?“
Or: „I’ve been feeling very lonely at this party. Everyone is having such a good time. Do you want to dance with me?“

And of course: „Do you love me?” „Why do you love me?” and „Why else do you love me?”

Again the Critical Parent will be fiercely involved in making sure these questions aren’t asked (or answered) throwing up all manner of objections such as:

„That’s a silly question,” „You are coming across real needy,” „You’ll never get an answer,” „Don’t be childish” and so on and on, ad nauseam.

**EMOTIONALLY LITERATE TRANSACTION # 3:**
**Accepting Strokes. Taking in strokes we want**

When we get stroke-starved we need strokes in much the same way that we need food. We are like a starved, tired person coming home from work, considering a month-old drumstick from the back of the refrigerator. We may become confused about what strokes to take or to reject.

We may be stroke-starved because we simply are not getting any strokes at all. We may develop a sort of stroke anorexia and voluntarily starve ourselves of them. Or we may be extremely picky and refuse any but certain sought after strokes. On the other hand, strokes may be offered to us, which are toxic, but seem attractive on the surface and we may take them. Or we may knowingly take bad strokes like a person drinking sea water who knows it will be deadly. Given all these complications, there is always the danger that we will take strokes we should reject or that we will discount and not accept a beneficial stroke that we actually want.

**CASE STUDY IN ACCEPTANCE**

In one of my training workshops, after I explained the Stroke Economy and established the ground rules (No power plays or pressure to do anything and no lies) I invited the participants to go ahead and break any of the five rules of the Stroke Economy.

A thoughtful quiet ensued. After some of the people gave and took strokes for a while, Anna began to talk about how she had plenty of permission to give strokes but no permission to take them and even less to ask for them.

I asked her if she wanted to do something about it.

Shyly she agreed, and I asked her what she wanted to do.

„I would like to give everyone here a stroke,“ she said.
I responded that this would be very nice but it might be a bit too easy for her. How about asking everybody to give her a stroke?

She was taken aback by the suggestion and shook her head.

I said: „Well, in that case what if just one person here gave you a stroke?

„Okay.“

„Good!” I said, „I think you should ask.“

She found the very though of this very difficult but eventually after some fretting she said to the group, „I would like a stroke from anyone here.“

Valery eagerly offered. „I am so glad you asked, can I give you a stroke?“

„Okay,“ said Anna.

„I have known you for some years now, and what I like about you most is how sweet and loving you are.“

Anna’s face darkened. „Thank you,“ she said.

I saw that something about the stroke did not work. „Can I ask you, Anna, did you take that stroke?“ I inquired.

Thinking about it, she said no. She explained that while she heard the stroke she also heard her Critical Parent say „She really doesn’t know you. That sweetness is just an act, always being nice, never being yourself.“

I turned to Valery and asked her if she agreed that she didn’t know Anna. Valery responded. „I know that she is shy and sometimes doesn’t speak her mind, but she is very loving, and I know that for a fact.“

Turning to Anna I asked if she believed Valery and Anna looked doubtful.

„Do you think she is lying?“ I asked.

„Maybe to make me feel good…”

„But we have a specific agreement not to do that. Do you really think that?“

Anna though for a few seconds. „I guess not."

„You know what, Anna?“ I asked. Anna looked at me curiously. „I think to do this right you need to apologize to Valery; she offered you this heartfelt stroke, and instead you listened to your Critical Parent and rejected it. Would you consider apologizing and ask her to give you the stroke again?“
Anna, shocked by this suggestion at first, agreed. She apologized and asked for the stroke again. This time she heard it and smiled happily and took a deep breath as a warm blush spread over her cheeks. Clearly, Anna had leaped a big hurdle and everyone was moved. It may be quite a struggle to convince someone to take a heartfelt stroke, but it is worth the effort. Giving a stroke that is rejected or discounted can be embarrassing and disappointing for both parties, so it is reasonable to gently persist; when we give a stroke and suspect that it hasn’t been fully accepted, it is important to investigate:

„Did you hear what I said? Do you accept it? Do you believe me?”

„It seems that you did not quite take in my compliment, am I right?”

„Please take the stroke. I really mean it.”

„Didn’t you like what I said? Why? Is there some other way I can phrase it?”

Keep in mind that for stroke-starved people, strokes sometimes act like water on a parched houseplant. At first they may sit on the surface or run right through and not be absorbed. Watering such a plant make take extra care but eventually water will soak into the soil. Sometimes the process must be repeated before there is any effect. Because of this, it is important to watch people as you give them strokes.

A stroke is a transaction that involves both the giver and the taker not just with words but biochemically. Because it is an emotional event that involves the body it takes time to take its full course. You can tell from the recipient’s body language if the stroke is accepted or rejected. A deep breath or a quietly satisfied look are the best signs that a stroke has been heard and, more important, fully taken in.

EMOTIONALLY LITERATE TRANSACTION # 4.
Rejecting unwanted strokes. „Thanks but no thanks”

The most obvious example of unwanted strokes is sexual strokes from someone we are not interested in. Most people can attest that it is very hard to categorically reject certain unwanted sexual strokes. A woman may be unable to reject a sexual comment because she feels it would be impolite to ask the person to stop. A child may be puzzled by what seems to be a sexual stroke but does not dare take it that way. A man may feel it his manly duty to respond to a woman’s advances.

Learning to reject unwanted strokes is an important skill—we need to stop the unwanted stroke to avoid a more uncomfortable or even damaging situation. Furthermore, when adults or older children impose sexual strokes on younger children or adolescents, those strokes are undeniably harmful. Curiosity and hunger for attention can result in a child seeming to consent to sexual strokes, which will damage them emotionally. When we teach kids about molestation, we are essentially teaching them how to reject injurious strokes and, if necessary, get away from (and report) someone who won’t take no for an answer.
There are other unwanted strokes that are less obvious than the ones mentioned above. These are not toxic strokes; rather, they are strokes that seem to limit us. For example, a beautiful woman may eventually tire of being constantly told she’s beautiful. When that stroke is offered to her, it may make her feel one-dimensional, as though that is all anyone ever notices about her. If she thinks that the affection of others is based only on her beauty, then she may feel trapped into always playing the part of the empty headed pretty woman. Actually, she may be starved to have attention paid to her ideas, her work, or her integrity. With emotional literacy training, she would learn to explain:

„I’m sorry but I’ve been feeling lately that you only compliment me for my looks. I guess I feel neglected in other ways. For instance, I really wanted you to congratulate me on my job promotion. But I know you don’t mean to offend or disappoint me. Instead of strokes about my looks could you give me other compliments instead?“

Similarly, a hard-working man who is constantly praised for his hard work and responsibility may tire of such praise. Perhaps he would like to have more fun, and he feels that he is only appreciated for his willingness to work. Or perhaps he has other talents or admirable qualities that he feels no one notices, such as being good with his kids, or being sexy.

When people begin to resent a stroke they often receive, they usually think they must always play the same old role to be appreciated. Of course, rejecting an unwanted stroke can be uncomfortable and possibly even damage your relationship with the other person. After all, when a person gives you a compliment from the heart, he or she expects to hear at least a thank you. In these cases it is important to decline the stroke gracefully. In an open-hearted manner explain why, and state what you would rather hear and ask for the stroke you really want.

SEPARATING THE WHEAT FROM THE CHAFF

For some the most difficult task in this enterprise is separating the strokes we do want from those we don’t want, and separating the strokes that are good for us from those that may be harmful. When we don’t seem to want a certain stroke we need to ask ourselves: „Do I reject this stroke because it is not right for me or is this a perfectly good stroke that my Critical Parent doesn’t want me to have?“ When we decide that the stroke offered is good and we want it, we must fight our Critical Parent and accept it. If we figure out that it is bad or redundant, then we should reject it.

Lately there has been a society-wide movement to help people (mostly women and children) to reject strokes they don’t want. This is a very positive development that protects them from the damage unwanted strokes can cause. The negative side of this movement is that we have built up additional barriers against all sorts of strokes. People are afraid that their heartfelt strokes will be misinterpreted and they will be perceived as being harmful or that in some cases simply holding a crying child or being friendly with a coworker will be construed as sexual behavior.
This new stroke phobia is most evident in the way people who work with children are now refraining from any physical affection, no matter how innocuous. The fear of legal or social persecution reinforces the effects of the Stroke Economy and contributes greatly to the current emotional numbing of people and an increase in social alienation and depression. This is why it has become even more important to teach this distinction between the strokes we want and are good for us from the strokes that are bad or unwanted and should be rejected.

EMOTIONALLY LITERATE TRANSACTION # 5.
Giving Ourselves Strokes; healthy self-love.

While there is no real substitute for getting strokes from others, knowing how to give ourselves strokes is an important skill that is very useful when we get into a difficult situation, away from people who will stroke us. Most of us have been conditioned to think of „patting ourselves on the back“ as immodest and conceited or even needy, foolish, and humiliating. There is nothing to be embarrassed about in giving yourself strokes even if you are not in great need of them. There may be things good things about yourself that others do not know, or perhaps people in your life have been stingy with their strokes and you need a few more than you are getting.

For instance, after everyone had devoured a meal that Colin made, he looked around the table and asked,"Well, did you like the food?“

Everyone nodded and grunted appreciatively, but offered little in the way of detailed response. Somewhat disappointed by the lack of praise, Colin said, „Well, if you ask me, I thought the chicken was really tender and the rice was spicy and fluffy. I can see you all enjoyed it. I’m really happy.“

„Are you upset with us? We really did like it. I know I did,“ said Carrie, worried that Colin was reprimanding them for their meager responses.

„No, I was just giving myself a little pat on the back for a job well done,“ he declared. The others smiled approvingly, and everyone felt good about the exchange.

SELF-STROKES TO FIGHT THE CRITICAL PARENT

We especially need to be able to stroke ourselves to counteract the negative strokes we get from our Critical Parent, telling us that we are stupid, bad, crazy, ugly, sick or doomed. For this we need to understand how to respond when our Critical Parent attacks us.

If your Critical Parent says that you are stupid and unreliable and can’t be trusted, you need to be able to contradict this slander and tell yourself something like: „I am intelligent and a high achiever. Considering the fact that I have two well-cared for
children at home, I know I am reliable and can be trusted. I am proud of how smart, reliable, and trustworthy I am."

If your Critical Parent says that you are fat, ugly, and doomed, you need to be able to say, "So I don't have the looks of a model. But I have a nice healthy body and people have told me they find me handsome and attractive. I like the way I look and I am sure that I will meet the right partner for me." The same approach is useful when you are assaulted by other people's Critical Parent.

In Transactional Analysis the source of this kind of positive "self talk" is called the "Nurturing Parent." Certain people are able to preserve a bedrock compassion toward themselves, despite criticism and ridicule from peers. This healthy self-love suggests a well-established, core confidence supported by the Nurturing Parent. However no matter how good a Nurturing Parent we have it can run out of energy. The Nurturing Parent neutralizes the Critical Parent and is like a battery that is available as long as it is kept charged with a steady input of positive strokes.
SUMMARY

We start this training by Opening the Heart because the heart is at the seat of love around which emotional literacy is built. We open our hearts and strengthen our bonds with others by giving and receiving strokes.

We all need positive strokes. There are physical strokes, such as hugs and kisses; verbal strokes, such as compliments about our looks, intelligence, kindness, integrity, or taste; and action strokes, such as being attentive or helpful or showing empathy or affection.

The Stroke Economy is a set of rules that prevents us from giving and asking for strokes, accepting the strokes we want, and rejecting the ones we don't want. It also prevents us from giving ourselves strokes. The result is that we become stroke-starved and are willing to take whatever strokes we can get.

By releasing ourselves from the rules of the Stroke Economy, we free ourselves to be loving with each other, and satisfy our need for strokes. We disobey the inner Critical Parent, which enforces the rules of the Stroke Economy and interferes with every attempt to gain emotional literacy.

We learn how to give people the strokes they want. We ask for the strokes we want. We learn how to accept or reject strokes. To do this we must figure out whether we want or don't want a certain stroke that is offered.

It's difficult to reject a stroke we don't want when we are stroke-starved. That is one reason why we need to learn to ask for and accept strokes we want. This keeps us stroke-nourished so that we are not tempted to take toxic strokes. We should reject toxic strokes, but when our Critical Parent prevents us from taking a stroke we want we should defy this prohibition.

With our Nurturing Parent we can give ourselves strokes to build our self-confidence. Still we need to get strokes from others to keep our Nurturing Parent strong.
CHAPTER 5.

SURVEYING THE EMOTIONAL LANDSCAPE

Opening the Heart is concerned with the exchange of an exclusively positive emotion; love. Even so, the exercise can tap major negative emotions because of the Critical Parent’s opposition to positive exchanges. Fear, anger and shame can be triggered in the simple act of giving and taking strokes. Still the basic currency of Opening the Heart is positive emotion. In the next step, Surveying the Emotional Landscape, we squarely face and seek out not only positive emotions but negative emotions as well.

We can discuss the nature and purpose of our emotions, negative or positive and even whether they are our friends or enemies. We cannot argue, however, with their existence. They affect us every minute of the day, whether we know it or not. Many of us are numb to our emotions, others too sensitive to them. We may be afraid of them or too ready to embrace them. The emotions can be calm and soothing or as threatening as a stormy sea. How to become aware of our emotions and the emotions of others is the subject of this section. Here we will learn to recognize, map out and navigate the emotional terrain.

The causes of our emotions are often unclear. We tend to mistakenly think of them as irrational. Every emotion we have has a definite cause and that cause is more often than not someone else’s behavior. We need to understand these causes if we are to be emotionally literate.

I CAN MAKE YOU FEEL, YOU CAN MAKE ME FEEL

In the last two decades popular psychology has led us to believe that we cannot cause feelings in others. You may have come to believe this false idea which gained a foothold when the poem written by the psychologist Fritz Perls. the „Gestalt Prayer,“ gained acceptance as it was recited at thousands of human potential workshops across the Western World.

I do my thing, and you do your thing.
I am not in this world to live up to your expectations
And you are not in this world to live up to mine.
You are you and I am I, if by chance we find each other, it’s beautiful.
If not, it can’t be helped.

I believe that with his poem, Perls was trying to help people rid themselves of the excessive and guilt-based demands that people often make on themselves and each other. However, what he wrote became vulgarized into a call for emotional irre-
sponsibility. In essence, it supported the belief that we are not responsible for the way others feel.

Another source for that belief is Buddhism which also deeply influenced the human potential movement in the US. According to that interpretation of Buddhism we must strive to disconnect our emotions from the actions of others.

Whatever its source, the mistaken belief that we cannot make one another feel is the high point of emotional illiteracy. Years ago, I was so disturbed by the misguided implications in Perls’s poem, that I wrote a response to it.

If I do my thing and you do your thing
And if we don’t live up to each other’s expectations
We might live but the world will not survive.
You are you, and I am I,
and together, joining hands, not by chance,
We will find each other beautiful.
If not, we can’t be helped.

What I was trying to say here is obvious to most feeling people: We are responsible for each other. Regarding emotions, we can indeed cause them in each other, and therefore we are often responsible for other people’s feelings. However, there are those who vehemently disagree. At a lecture in which I was presenting my point of view on the subject, a man stood up and interrupted me.

„I completely disagree with you,“ he exclaimed. „You cannot make me feel anything unless I let you."

I am embarrassed to admit that I took his bait. Faking anger, I stared at him and said: „That is the stupidest thing I have ever heard! Sit down!“

Stunned by my response, he turned bright red and sat down. From where I stood, he appeared to be scared and very sad.

„Now, may I ask you something?“ I smugly asked. „What are you feeling right now?“

„Nothing,“ he insisted.

I was bewildered by his response. He was obviously shaken, yet he insisted that he was not. I turned to the rest of the audience and asked: „How about you? Did anybody feel anything?“

Many hands shot up. One by one, people voiced their feelings. I had made some of them angry with my fake attack. Others were embarrassed for my victim, while others felt afraid. Personally, I was left very uneasy because I believe it is wrong to power play or lie, and by faking anger I lied and attempted to power play my inter-
locutor. Yet I had proven my point. A number of people had been made to feel strong emotions by my staged response to my victim.

Clearly, if people can be made to feel fear, anger, shame, and other negative emotions, then they can also be made to feel the emotions of joy, love, pride, and hope. That is ultimately what achieving emotional literacy is all about; giving people the tools to move from emotional numbness or frightening chaos to a positive, heart-centered, responsive and responsible, emotionally balanced life.

In this stage of the training we explore emotional awareness, which is the understanding of how emotions affect us every day. We will examine what we feel and what others feel, how strongly we feel those feelings, and why. The goal of this stage is to make us comfortable and well-oriented in the „emotional landscape.“

We will look at:

✦ The connection between one person’s actions and another person’s feelings and
✦ The connection between a person’s feelings and his or her own actions.

Both of these points relate to the fact that actions and feelings are closely related to each other and can’t be kept apart. Our actions can cause feelings in the people around us which in turn can cause them to act in ways which will cause feelings in us and so on, and so on. In fact the great majority of the emotions that we experience are the result of interactions with other people. True, some emotions are aroused by our own thoughts or by events (like being hit by a car or falling out of a boat) that are not directly related to others but our emotional lives are largely the result of human interactions. The cycle of feelings and actions can be positive and constructive, or it can be destructive and vicious. It is the connection between actions and feelings that we are looking at in this next step.

**EMOTIONALLY LITERATE TRANSACTION # 6.**

**The Action/Feeling Statement**

An action/feeling statement is a judgment-free method of exploring the connection between actions and feelings. It is a one-sentence description of the emotions we feel as the result of another person’s action. With this transaction we find a way of talking about our feelings that does not involve judgments, accusations, or theories. The boilerplate version of this transaction is as follows:

„When you (action), I felt (emotion).“

Very simple, isn’t it? This statement is designed to tell another person about a feeling you had because of his or her behavior. It also helps to avoid placing blame or making someone defensive by staying away from any judgments or accusations. An action/feeling statement simply says that the acknowledged action of one person resulted in an undeniable feeling in another.
ACTION/FEELING CASE STUDY

John and Mary have a telephone conversation that Mary ends abruptly. John is upset by this sudden disconnection. The next day he calls Mary to tell her how her action made him feel. He asks if he can tell her something that is troubling him, and she agrees to listen to it. „When you suddenly wanted to stop talking on the phone last night, I felt angry at first, and then sad.“ Assuming that Mary can agree that she ended the telephone conversation abruptly, she now understands that John felt sad and angered by her action. That’s all, no more, no less; this action/feeling statement successfully provides Mary with information about how John felt when she stopped the conversation.

A small goal you might say, but a critically important one in the learning of emotional literacy. It conveys information about John’s feelings in connection with Mary’s actions. It is also a way for John to express his feelings in a way that did not upset Mary.

A single action/feeling statement shows that an action resulted in a particular feeling. A series of action/feeling exchanges will have a dramatically clarifying effect on any emotional conflict. The reason for this is that action/feeling statements are a means of dissecting an emotional conflict, part by part. This is done by separating a conflict into two elements: What happened and what you felt.

In an emotionally literate relationship, no emotional event is too small to be dismissed. Invariably, once these seemingly trivial emotional events are explored, they reveal deeper emotional issues-personal insecurities, recurrent conflicts, real or perceived inequities or persistent hurts in a relationship.

Action/feeling statements are not as easy to exchange as it might seem; errors can be made.

ACTION/FEELING ERROR #1: Confusing Action with Motivation

When attempting to describe an action, it is possible to go beyond a simple statement, such as:

• „When you hung up the telephone.“
• „When you arrived late.“
• „When you interrupted me.“

and add to it a judgment or interpretation of the action being described, such as:

• „When you so rudely hung up on me.“
• „When you humiliated me by being late.“
• „When you showed your disregard for my opinion by interrupting me.“

These statements put forward a theory about the other person’s motivation (the intent to insult, humiliate or disregard), rather than a simple description of an action. Elaborations like these confuse matters. They are often incorrect, and will create unnecessary guilt, anger, and other disturbing feelings in the recipient. We will see later how to express these elaborations by stating our hunches and intuitions. For now we are dealing with the connection between one person’s actions and another person’s feelings.

**ACTION/FEELING ERROR #2: Confusing Feelings with Thoughts**

Another error that can occur in stating an action/feeling statement is confusing feeling and thinking. When we try to express a feeling, we often state a thought instead. For instance:

„When you interrupted our conversation, I felt that you were angry,“ or

„I felt that you weren't interested in what I had to say."

These are not feelings at all. Like the interpretations we looked at above, they are actually theories about what was going on in the other person’s mind. Literacy has to do with language, and to confuse a feeling with an idea, thought, or theory is a common mistake that we need to avoid. In fact any sentence that begins with „I feel that...” is most likely to be about a though perhaps best expressed by saying „I think that...” or „I believe that...”

To construct a good action/feeling statement, you need to focus on what you feel, not what you suspect or assume that the other person is thinking or feeling. The only thing you can know for sure is how you feel. If you want to know how others feel you have to ask and make sure. Many arguments between people are based on this type of false assumption.

For instance, Frances believes that her husband doesn’t look up from the paper when she talks because he isn’t interested in what she has to say. Actually, he is interested; the problem is that he tries to do two things he is interested in at the same time, something that doesn’t work very well in most cases.

Frances can’t be sure that her husband is not interested in what she has to say but she is sure that when he splits his attention between her and the sports section she feels sad and eventually, very angry. She might be tempted to say „the way you read your paper while we eat makes me feel that you are not interested in me.” Instead it might be better if she said „When you read the paper while we eat it makes me sad and after a while I get angry.”

Another more subtle version of this confusion of feeling with thought is a statement like:
“When you interrupted our conversation, I felt rejected.”

This is an error too, since rejection is not really an emotion but, again, a theory about the other person’s motivation to reject you. It does not explain to your listener what you are feeling. Were you angry? Were you sad? Were you embarrassed? Were you ashamed? These are feelings. Rejection is not.

When you say that you felt rejected, you are really saying that you believe that the other person rejected you, a theory about the person’s motivation that may be incorrect. All the above errors involve either laying blame or trying to read the mind of the other person. Action/feeling statements teach us to stick to the facts and to stop assuming we can read other people’s minds. *Keep the action/feeling statement simple: What happened and how you felt.*

**PRIMARY AND SECONDARY EMOTIONS**

How do we know what we feel? Opinions vary on the definitive list of basic primary emotions. Fortunately for all practical purposes we have a pretty good understanding that anger, fear, sadness and shame are primary negative emotions while love, joy and hope are primary positive emotions. Saying that certain emotions are positive or negative does not imply that some emotions are better than others—in fact all emotions are important—just that some feel good and others feel bad.

It must be realized, however, that when we put a name and positive or negative valence (terror, apprehension, sadness, etc) to an internal subjective experience we are engaging in a rather arbitrary activity. The experience that occurs when we perceive a threat to our life; the heart beat, the tingling skin, the pressure in our head the widening of our eyes and paralysis of the limbs, all existed before somebody called it fear, angst, miedo or pavour. The emotional/biochemical response to a life threatening situation didn’t need a whole lot of discussion.

Humans felt the need to call the fear response by a name in order to talk about it as in:

„When that big wave hit me and pulled me under, my heart beat fast. I was afraid.”

Then another person could agree „That’s what happened when the volcano erupted. My heart beat fast and I was afraid.”

And the somebody else might say „I was not afraid.” And he might get elected Chief of the tribe.

The more that fear becomes removed from life threatening situations the more it is important that we be able to talk about it. On one hand we may become terrified of harmless spiders, on the other hand we may not feel fear when we are threatened with death or banishment from the tribe. Both situations are problematic for sur-
vival and merit discussion. We seek to perfect our emotional dialogue in order to be able to live in harmony with our emotions.

But speaking of the primary emotions is not sufficient to understand our emotional lives. Jealousy, hope, guilt, envy, hopelessness or melancholy, to name a few, are secondary combinations of basic emotions and can’t be understood in terms of just one emotion. When speaking about them we should try to break them down into their primary component parts.

For instance, if Sam is feeling guilty, it might be helpful if he realized that his guilt is made up of shame and fear. Daria could explain her emotions more clearly when she is envious if she specified that her primary emotions are anger, sadness and fear and that would expand her awareness of her emotional landscape. On the other hand, if a person says he feels humiliated, discounted, rejected, insulted or loved for instance, those are definitely not emotions but statements about what he believes others are doing to him and potentially confusing rather than enlightening. They need to be reevaluated and the hidden emotional response needs to be discovered and stated. When a person says that he feels humiliated he may actually be feeling ashamed and afraid, when „feeling” discounted the actual feelings could be angry and sad. Insulted may mean ashamed and angry or sad and angry or just plain angry. Feeling loved could be more complicated: It could be joy, it could be joy and hope or it could be simply love.

Many questions about what the primary emotions are, how the combine into secondary emotions for different people and why remain to be answered. Is sex an emotion? How about hunger or thirst? Are psychological pain and hurt emotions? As of this writing, I am not sure. It remains to be seen. That should not prevent us from continuing to pursue emotional literacy by stating actions and feelings in as clear a manner as possible. As we do this we will become more emotionally sophisticated and develop new and useful ways of communicating about our emotions.

On occasion it seems that people express emotions that are not genuine. It is possible to exaggerate emotions for the purpose of power playing others with them. These expressions of manufactured emotion are called „rackets” in transactional analysis. However it is important to realize that unless an emotion is faked for the purpose of influencing others all emotions are genuine no matter what the source or how „realistic” the connection between the feeling and its cause.

**ACTION/FEELING ERROR #3. Ignoring the intensity of an emotion**

Every primary emotion can be experienced in a range from weak to intense. Anger can go from irritation to fury, joy can range from contentment to ecstasy, fear can be apprehension and can be terror, love can be affection and can be heart-wrenching passion. We often tend to understate and sometimes overstate the intensity of our emotional experiences and that can lead to misunderstanding and confusion.
CLARIFYING AN ACTION/FEELING STATEMENT

Clarifying the feeling: Sometimes you may need to help a person clarify how he or she felt when you did something. To do this successfully you will have to ignore judgments and accusations and help shape what is being said into the action/feeling formula. It is especially important to listen carefully and intuitively to understand the other person’s feelings. In the above case of Mary and John, let’s imagine that John said:

“When you so rudely hung up yesterday, I felt that you didn’t care about me at all.“

In order to extract a workable action/feeling statement from this comment, Mary might respond:

“Wait, let me get this straight. You are saying that when I stopped our conversation yesterday, which I remember doing, you felt something. But I can’t tell what it was you felt. Were you angry?“

“No, I felt you were being rude.“

“Okay, you thought I was being rude, but would you be willing to tell me how you felt? I am unclear about how you felt at the time.“

“I don’t know. I felt that you didn’t like me.“

“Well, O.K. but you still haven’t told me how you felt.“

“What do you mean?“

“You are saying that I was rude and that I don’t like you and I would like to talk about that later. But I am trying to figure out what feeling, what emotion you felt. What were you feeling that made you think I didn’t like you? Were you sad? Angry?“

“A bit. Actually, yeah, very sad. Then I started to feel angry.

“Okay, that’s what I wanted to know. You felt sad and angry. “

By now, dear reader, you may be saying: „People don’t talk like that in the real world. Maybe they do in California, but not anywhere else. I’m not willing to talk like that. I’d be embarrassed to death. “

That’s a fine action/feeling statement. To rephrase it slightly:

“When speaking in an emotionally literate way, I feel embarrassment.“ (Or more accurately I feel shame and fear.)

I recognize the problem and can only agree with you. People don’t usually talk this way and it is embarrassing and very difficult at times. But it works. It creates a favorable climate for rational, emotional expression. It cools down unruly feelings,
gives people an opportunity to express these emotions that is less likely to result in further upset, and lays the groundwork for safe and productive emotional dialogue. It lets others know that how they feel is important to us—that we listen to them and value them enough to have an honest exchange. It informs people of each other’s emotional terrain so that they can more easily find their way around it in the future.

Clarifying the action: It is important for an action/feeling statement to work that both persons agree that the action alluded to actually happened. Perhaps the recipient does not remember because it was long ago, or because there was too much going on at the time. Or perhaps the recipient remembers the situation but does not remember the action as described.

Example:

„When you changed Suzie’s diaper while I was speaking, I felt angry”

„I don’t remember, can you refresh my memory?”

„I was telling you about my upsetting conversation with Joe and Suzie came in crying and you changed her diaper and never came back to our conversation.”

„OK, I remember now. I see: you felt angry then.”

EMOTIONALLY LITERATE TRANSACTION #7.
Accepting an Action/Feeling Statement;
non-defensive reception of emotional information

To be effective, an emotionally literate communication must be received as well as sent. When you are the recipient of an action/feeling statement, the emotionally literate thing to do is to take careful note of the emotions being described and your action that triggered them. This can be very difficult because when we are told that we may have made a mistake or that we have made another person feel badly we are likely to respond with guilt and defensiveness.

Our first impulse will be to deny, explain, justify or even apologize. But instead, I want to emphasize, it is important to simply absorb the information that is being given: The emotions caused in another person by your actions. The point is not how bad or wrong you were to act the way you did, but how what you did made the other person feel.

Nor is the point that you should apologize immediately or explain why you did what you did; there will be a time and place for that later, if necessary. The point is understanding the connection between your action and what the other person felt.

Remember, we are interested in understanding how we affect each other emotionally and in getting a map of the emotional terrain we live in, rather than placing or accepting responsibility or blame. Taking responsibility is important, but it comes
later, after we understand each other well enough to apologize and make amends meaningfully and effectively.

Mary, to use the above example, may already know that her behavior left John feeling angry and sad, or she might be surprised. She may understand why he feels this way, or she may be puzzled by it. In any case, all she needs to do for now is to listen carefully, get the information, and acknowledge it. This acknowledgment can be in the form of a nod, or by saying, “I hear you,” or “I understand that when I ended the conversation, you felt sad, and then angry.”

By doing this, Mary learns about John’s emotional responses to different types of situations, and she gives him an opportunity to let go of his unhappy feelings. This begins the process of emotional dialogue in which feelings are given proper recognition.

Again, accepting an action/feeling statement is not easy. The danger in receiving an action/feeling statement, especially if it is imperfectly formulated, is triggering a defensive response and saying something like:

• “I thought you were finished talking; that’s why I wanted to stop,” or

• “Rude? You were being rude by talking on and on about your problems,” or

• “Angry? You have a lot of nerve being angry. I should be angry about the waste of my time,” or

• “Sad? Don’t be so self-indulgent.”

Every one of these responses is a defensive denial of John’s feelings.

Responses like these keep an emotionally literate dialogue from taking place. Most of the time we respond this way because we feel guilty about having hurt someone. If Mary feels misunderstood, guilty, or angry, she can talk about that later. For now what matters are John’s feelings, not Mary’s. It’s just a matter of taking turns.

What is important at this point is that Mary acknowledge what John felt when she wanted to stop talking. Then she can talk about how she feels. Often this process calls for you to bite your tongue and be patient. Keep in mind that silence can cool down the escalation of emotionally charged conversations. But more important, it is the only fair thing to do when a friend or loved one is in emotional distress. Why? Because it gives the person a chance to get his or her distress out and gives you a chance to exercise your love and empathy.

Of course a defensive response can simply be a way of dismissing someone we don’t want to deal with. When we encounter this kind of deliberately dismissive response we have a special problem. Do we accept that we are dealing with someone who simply is not interested and that we are wasting our emotional energies, or do we
try again to get an emotionally literate response. We’ll explore ways of dealing with this dilemma next in this chapter under: Revealing our Intuitive Hunches.

AN ACTION/FEELING TRANSACTION THAT WORKED

Here’s another example: Marianne and Mick had decided to watch a video together one evening. Mick was about to turn on the tape when the phone rang. „Hold on,“ Marianne said, „this may be Lilly and I want to talk to her for a minute. Is that OK?“ Mick agreed.

Meanwhile, he had decided to put away some papers while he waited for her. When he looked up he saw her laughing on the phone. A funny show was on the TV and Mick got interested in it. Later, her phone conversation ended, Marianne stood near the couch waiting for Mick to start their movie.

After a while Mick turned to her „When are you going to be ready?“ he said with irritation.

„I’ve been ready,“ she said, surprised.

„I’ve been right here, waiting for you.“

„Fine, whatever, I just don’t know what took so long,“ he said impatiently as he moved to turn on the movie.

This type of interaction had become a common experience between them. Mick’s impatience surfaced several times a day in his interactions with Marianne. Marianne was suddenly flooded with sadness. She often felt that she took the blame for their little conflicts, and that made her very unhappy.

She did not want to start their evening feeling sad and resentful. She decided to intervene with an action/feeling statement;

„Mick, I’m sorry but I need to talk to you before we start.“

He looked at her with dismay, but agreed. Marianne proceeded:

„When you spoke to me just now in that tone, I felt pretty bad about it. It made me very sad.“

„What was the tone?“ Mick asked.

He had heard this type of complaint from friends and family before.

„Well, you sounded very annoyed.“

„Well, that’s true, I was annoyed.“ He thought for a few seconds. Then he said, „I see what happened now. When I talked with you in that annoyed-sounding tone, you felt bad. “ He looked in Marianne eyes and asked: „Is that right?“
She nodded.

„I am sorry“ he said, „I should work on that annoyed tone of voice. Does that feel better?“ He stopped leaning impatiently toward the VCR for the first time during their conversation, put both arms around her waist gave her a tender kiss. The action/feeling transaction worked and they had a lovely evening.

The above suggestions are designed to simply bring out the feelings people have in response to other people's actions. ITY’s important to know that when I did a certain thing you had a certain feeling. But surely we can’t speak very long without going deeper and dealing with people’s motivations and intentions. The next step in emotionally literate dialogue is designed to accomplish that.

**EMOTIONALLY LITERATE TRANSACTION #8.**
**Revealing Our Intuitive Hunches.**
**Getting a „reality check“ on an intuition about another person’s actions or intentions**

In our interactions we are often not clear about what is going on our thoughts or emotions let alone the other person’s. We may not be concerned or even interested and proceed as if everything is just fine. But if we do become interested in the other person’s inner life we could make a guess or assumption and easily misinterpret what is going on. Or we may guess accurately what the other is thinking or feeling and discount it.

Most of us like to think that what we say is logical and rational and comes from our Adult ego state. At a party, we may act childlike and happily acknowledge it. Or, when lecturing a whiny toddler, we may be parental and make no apology for it. But in most situations, we prefer to believe we are behaving in a logical and rational way—that is, „from our Adult.“

We have a hard time admitting we may be acting irrationally, like a Child, or reacting out of prejudice, like a punitive or even a nurturing Parent. But a great deal of what people do and say comes from ego states other than the Adult. What is going on under cover of the Adult façade is accessible to our intuition.

The accurate use of our intuitive powers plays an absolutely central function in emotional literacy training. Intuition is your most powerful emotional tool. With it you can make powerful guesses when all the facts are not available.

It shouldn’t be surprising that we can sometimes be fooled—or at least confused—by behaviors we observe in others. Let us use pretend we are invisible and use our intuition with a couple shopping at a super-market:

Wife (noticing a six-pack in the shopping cart): „I didn’t know we were buying beer.“

Is this simply an Adult question or an expression of Parental disapproval?
Husband (responding): „Well, yeah!“

Is this also simply an Adult confirmation to his wife’s Adult question or is it Child rebelliousness? How can you decide the ego states involved in this exchange?

Before Eric Berne developed Transactional Analysis he became very interested in intuition. It was intuition, he said, that told him about the Inner Child that is behind what we do much of the time. Following Eric Berne’s example we can use our intuition in making an initial guess whenever we are in the dark about someone’s emotions or intentions. When in doubt, scientists, detectives, and market analysts, psychologists and psychotherapists use their intuitions to guide their actions. What determines their success, however, is how accurately they check out their initial hunches. A detective who guesses the butler did it can’t make the arrest without proof. A scientist who blindly follows his hunches without validating them will surely fail in the end. In the same way, if you use your intuition to discern people’s feelings and thoughts you must check out your hunch before acting on it.

In the case of the shopping couple, use your intuition and ask yourself what the husband and wife dialogue sounded like. Was it Adult to Adult, („You bought beer?”—„Yeah”) or was it Parent to Child? („Are you planning to get drunk?”—„Try and stop me!”) You will probably guess right, but a guess is not good enough. Evidence must be objectively collected.

It may help if you continue to observe and gather more information. Let’s listen to the wife’s response.

Wife: „Oh!” (smiling) „Okay!”

Her response seems to indicate that she accepts his answer as an Adult response to an Adult question. Nothing more is said on the subject and they go about their business.

Was this in fact an Adult to Adult transaction? Probably, but maybe not. If you could follow them home and continue to be invisible, it would eventually become clear.

Does he drink the whole six-pack before dinner? Does she throw a fit or go into a deep sulk? Or do they share a beer while they are having their hamburgers and finish the six-pack over the next two weeks?
I invite you to become a transactional analyst and observe people’s interactions at work, on the street or in social situations and try to analyze the ego states, feelings and thoughts being exhibited. In analyzing transactions like this, we must take care not to jump to conclusions. Intuition is rarely completely correct or incorrect. It’s not always possible to do, but to find out which intuitions are correct, it is necessary to check them constantly against reality.

HOW DO OTHERS FEEL?

In our daily lives we are constantly trying to understand the behavior of others. When we are communicating badly with another person (which is often the case), we are forced to guess what is going on in his or her mind by using whatever information is available. We don’t usually ask people why they are doing whatever they are doing. We probably would not get a reliable answer even if we did ask. When we want to figure out why people do what they do we are forced to largely rely on our intuition. But using something as fuzzy as intuition doesn’t always make our conclusion usable or valid. Our intuitive hunches need to be crosschecked and modified to fit what is going on.

Because a lot of what goes on in our emotional lives is often dark and negative our intuitions about people are often dark and negative as well. We fear that another person thinks that we are ugly or stupid, or that he would like to see us harmed, or that she would prefer not to be our friend at all. Often these fears are exaggerated.
but this does no make them completely inaccurate and they usually have a kernel of truth to them.

These negative intuitions if left alone and not checked against reality can turn into „paranoid fantasias.“ They are fantasies because they are the product of a feverish mind, and paranoid because they are inaccurate exaggerations of a grain of truth. I am not talking here about the kind of persecution delusions that makes paranoia a form of madness. The type of paranoia I am talking about has its origin in a heightened but distorted awareness generated by our intuition.

We are aware of many things that are never spoken about, or are discounted and denied by others. Unless we reveal and check out our intuitions we are left guessing at the motives of those others, and these intuitions may develop into paranoid fantasies and unspoken resentments. That is why it is important to bring our intuitions into the open and check them out before they damage our relationships. The best way to do this is to simply inquire: Are you angry, are you afraid, do you like me?

INTUITION IN ACTION, A CASE STUDY

Jane is upset about her coworker Bettina. She has been complaining to Marcus about how she does not understand Bettina’s behavior. Bettina seems spoiled to her, and she seems to have little respect for others. But Marcus likes Bettina and suspects that some kind of rivalry lurks behind Jane’s complaints. When Jane begins to describe in excruciating detail how much time and attention her boss gives to Bettina, Marcus is sure that Jane is somehow jealous of Bettina.

„It sounds as if you feel rejected by Bettina, and short-changed because she gets more attention than you,“ says Marcus.

„No, not at all,“ insists Jane. „Years ago I felt that way, a little. I’m just worried about her behavior, I think she’s alienating a lot of people.“

„But she’s very well-liked,“ says Marcus.

„I don’t know how that can last, given the way she behaves,“ declares Jane.

„I think the things you describe are not really that offensive, they’re just assertive,“ says Marcus. „Are you sure you don’t resent something about her that’s influencing your judgment?“ she asks as gently as she can.

„No, no, not at all,“ says Jane.

Marcus is stranded. Her intuition is buzzing loudly, but Jane insists she doesn’t harbor any bad feelings. The outcome is that Marcus feels less and less empathy for Jane’s distress. The experience of having his intuition discounted is so unpleasant that he feels unable to connect with his friend emotionally. Marcus begins to look at his watch, longing for a change in the conversation.
In this case having his intuition discounted made Marcus withdraw emotionally. When we sense something and it is denied, we have two options: Either we forget whatever it is that our intuition brought to our attention, or we persist in our idea. If we continue to get denials and dismissals of our intuitions, our efforts to figure out what is going on may lead us far off the mark, especially if we have an active imagination.

DISCOUNTING INTUITION

Here is another example of intuition denied but eventually validated.

Donna has been having misgivings about her friendship with Craig for a long time. From the beginning of their friendship she made it clear that she had no romantic interest but over the past few months she has developed a hunch that he is becoming interested in her as more than a friend, which makes her uncomfortable. It annoys her that he always seems to have a hidden romantic agenda.

Donna and her long time, on-and-off boyfriend Justin, move in together. Suddenly Craig stops calling and does not return a couple of Donna’s calls. Donna has come to feel so conflicted about Craig that she is almost relieved. Still, he is a dear friend and she really likes him. She doesn’t want to lose his friendship. She sends him a card with a short note enclosed, hoping he will respond.

Still no phone call from Craig. So she calls him, feeling nervous. He has been depressed, he tells her, because of his highly unsatisfying job. She swallows hard and raises the dreaded subject:

„I’ve been noticing that you haven’t called; I was wondering if you feel uncomfortable calling me here at my new apartment with Justin.“

„Oh no, not at all.“ Craig quickly answers.

„Are you sure? Maybe you feel weird about meeting Justin for the first time over the phone?“

„No, not at all,“ says Craig.

„Are you upset with me? Is something else wrong?“

„No, No."

This response leaves Donna confused. Despite Craig’s insistence that all is well, she still has a sense that there is something wrong with her dear friend. Emotionally, this is a minor catastrophe; it leaves her confused and distraught. Does she believe that he is really OK and only upset about work? Or is she angry because he is denying that something is wrong? Does she trust him? The questions his answer generates are enough to make her head spin.
What Craig did is called an „emotional discount.“ It denies Donna’s intuition that Craig is angry or upset by dismissing it entirely. Confusion and increased paranoia are usually the result of such a response. It is dangerous to a relationship to dismiss someone’s suspicions as wholly mistaken. The other person will rightly feel that he or she cannot be totally wrong, and may begin to suspect that you are being deceitful or that you are unaware of your motives.

Donna decides to take him at his word. But still no calls, no cards, no letters. Should she pursue him when the relationship is so fraught with unspoken friction? She decides to just leave it alone for a while.

By now Donna’s mind is tangled in knots: Why would he choose to drop her as a friend now? Does he feel too humiliated to call? Is he jealous of Justin? If so, did he lie when he said he didn’t feel badly about her move?

Donna believes that she has given Craig an opportunity to be honest. Instead he has negated her intuition in a baffling, deeply unpleasant way. Before long there seems to be no remnant of the friendship they had had for over four years. This an example of how off-putting and bewildering it can be to have one’s intuition negated.

EMOTIONALLY LITERATE TRANSACTION #9.
Validating an Intuitive Hunch; A search for the truth-no matter how small

Most of us have fears that prevent us from admitting that another person’s intuitions are true. We might consider such an admission a sign of excessive transparency and weakness on our part, or we may be reluctant to hurt another person’s feelings. In any event, the person who is presented with another’s intuition must overcome his reluctance and pursue its validation, if an emotionally literate dialogue is to result.

Let’s revisit the above example and see what would have happened if Craig had been more faithful to his true feelings.

„Are you sure, maybe you feel weird about meeting Justin for the first time over the phone?“ she asks again.

This time Craig chooses to validate instead of discount Donna’s intuition.

„Well, okay, since you asked, I will admit that I was a little bothered years when you started dating Justin seriously and never introduced us.“

Donna is taken aback. „I thought you understood that I’m reluctant to introduce my friends to each other sometimes. I told you about how I once introduced some people who really didn’t like one another, and it was pretty awkward.“

True enough, but clearly there’s more to be said; now it’s Donna’s turn to be honest.
„But, Craig, can I be honest, since you answered me honestly.“ She waits to get Craig’s permission to proceed. „I also was nervous about introducing you to Justin because I was interested in him romantically, and I have suspected for a long time that you were interested in me. I was afraid that you would feel jealous when I started dating Justin.“ Donna swallows hard. „Am I right that you have been jealous of us becoming a couple?“

This is the „moment of truth“ for Craig. He may deny the whole thing, or he may explain to Donna that her intuition is off, that something else was going on that she never guessed. Or he might have to admit that he feels exactly as she suspects. Perhaps he feels both jealous of Justin and suspicious that she just doesn’t like him enough to introduce him to her other friends. In any case, by finding out the truth about her intuition, Donna gets an emotionally literate dialogue going. In the earlier example, Craig’s complete denial leads to an emotional stonewall which left Donna feeling bewildered and overwhelmed by Craig’s unintelligible messages. After Craig’s clarification of his feelings, Donna is deeply relieved and their relationship has a new chance to continue.

Sometimes the entire intuition will be correct, not just part of it. For example, this conversation could easily have confirmed Donna’s entire intuition. It could have gone like this:

„Actually I am afraid you are right. I did harbor hopes of a relationship with you and I was jealous of Justin when you moved in together,”

Or I a different vein:

„Yes, Donna, I am angry with you. In fact, I’ve been really disappointed in you lately. I’m not sure I want to go on being friends. I’ve been wondering when you would get the hint and stop calling me.” Harsh words indeed, and not very emotionally literate, but better for Donna to hear them clearly expressed than to have to live in a confusing and endlessly hurtful emotional climate.

Donna and Craig may go on to explore why he doesn’t like her anymore, his hurt feelings and what she did to hurt them. Or they may temporarily drop the matter, and the friendship. Either way, they are several steps ahead in the process of understanding each other and living emotionally literate lives.

Usually, as in the case of Craig and Donna, matters are not nearly so far gone. Most problems of this sort are solvable, and when that is the case, this type of dialogue can work wonders to repair the little misunderstandings that otherwise erode a relationship.

THE PAYOFF: LOVING EMOTIONAL COOPERATION

Being able to discuss each other’s feelings can bring spectacular results, especially when both people are committed to frank emotional communication. In emotional
literacy training workshops, I explain how intuition, when used in an effective and emotionally literate way, can greatly help us understand one another.

For example, Sarah and Julie were attending one of my workshops. There are hard feelings between them.

Julie is 27 years old, with a model-like figure. She is considered very beautiful, even though she dresses down in order not to attract attention. Sarah is 35 and having problems keeping her weight down. They are office mates and have been having some unpleasant arguments. They have been encouraged by their boss to attend the workshop. Julie is upset and has actually been feeling afraid of coming to work because of these disputes.

In the midst of a discussion about intuition, Julie asked Sarah if she could talk to her about a hunch that she had. Sarah agreed.

„I have a suspicion that you think that I am incompetent and willing to submit to anything that the administration dishes out. Is that true?“

Sarah shook her head and anxiously responded: „Not at all. I think you’re very smart.“

Julie slumped in her chair, discouraged. At this point I explained that there is usually some truth in people’s hunches. Rather than flatly denying Julie’s hunch and giving her a stroke it might be better for Sarah to think about what—if anything—may be true in Julie’s fantasy.

„Emotional literacy involves honoring other people’s intuition, rather than discounting it,“ I reminded the group. „You have to be willing to look deeply into your own motives.“ I let that thought soak in for a moment and then asked Sarah if there was any truth to Julie’s intuition.

Sarah thought for several seconds and then nodded. „Julie, I guess your hunch is correct, in a way,“ she said nervously. „I do think that you’re very smart, but I’m angry at you because I believe that you scare easily and go along with people who intimidate you. That makes me think you’re weak. But I do believe you’re very smart.“

Julie felt better at hearing Sarah’s true feelings, and was able to agree that she was too easily intimidated. But she longed to learn to stand her ground the way Sarah did. Then she revealed another of her intuitions:

„I have another hunch, and this one is scary to bring up, but we agreed to be honest, so I feel I should. Do you want to hear what I am thinking?“

„OK,“ Sarah said with a worried expression.
„Well,“ said Julie, „I also am guessing that you resent that I’m younger and that the
men around the office find me attractive. I worry that you seem to believe that I am
some kind of bimbo.“

Everyone in the workshop became very quiet, nervously looking at Sarah and won-
dering how she would respond. I have to admit I was worried, too. Regardless of the
number of workshops I have led, I become hyper alert when one of the participants
brings up a scary subject like this.

„This is not easy but I have to agree that I am jealous of the attention you get from
the men around here,“ admitted Sarah. „That is part of my anger. I am not proud of
that, but it’s true.“

The group fell silent, as people wrestled with the awkwardness that they felt. An-
other group member named Mark finally broke in with an ice breaking question.
Eventually, Sarah and Julie got several heartfelt strokes for their courage and hon-
esty. The group went on exploring the subtleties of relationships in the office. After
a two-day workshop the group members left feeling empowered and optimistic.
Sarah and Julie have reconciled and given each other a long heartfelt hug.

As you can see, when we follow Opening the Heart with these two techniques-the
Action/Feeling statement and Validating an intuitive hunch-an emotionally literate
dialogue ensues, in which suspicion, fear, recrimination, and guilt are avoided.

Through these dialogues, people learn to speak honestly and gather information
about how they feel about each other. They discover how their actions affect one an-
other’s feelings, and how their intuitions reflect and distort reality. They do this
without judgments, accusations, or emotional chaos, while working toward the pos-
sibility of trust. The end result is loving emotional cooperation in which everyone
gets what they want; to love and be loved.

HOW EMPATHY MATURES

In a relationship, as trust and frank communication develop, people routinely share
their intuitive hunches and will find the grain of truth to validate other’s intuitions.
This ongoing dialogue fine tunes people’s understanding of each others’ emotional
terrain. People learn how others are likely to feel in certain situations; what worries
them and what puts them at ease. With these transactions, practiced over time, in-
tuition matures into a powerful empathetic sense.

Intuition often starts as a vague understanding that we are barely aware of and can
become a powerful searchlight illuminating the emotional landscape and rendering
it familiar and accessible. This heart-centered capacity to feel with others is an es-
sential component of the next stage of the training: Taking Responsibility.
ONE MORE CASE STUDY OF THE EMOTIONAL LANDSCAPE;
Putting It All Together

Now let’s see how it works when we put together the steps we have covered so far.

Carter and Sandra work with each other. Sandra, the owner of the company, is Carter’s boss. About six months ago they became involved in a sexual relationship. Now, after months of romantic bliss, they have begun to argue. They have asked me as a friend to help them disentangle the conflicts and bad feelings that are plaguing them. I like both of them and worry that they have created an impossible muddle for themselves. My fear is that they will either have to stop working together or break up, or both. They want to see if they can keep their working rapport while preserving their romantic relationship.

Despite their recent difficulties, they both say they have strong feelings for each other and would like to forge a long-term commitment. Their fights began at work with arguments over business policy and customer relations. Carter is friendly and easygoing with clients, while Sandra tends to be more businesslike. This is usually a good balance, except that Carter has given extensive credit to three clients who aren’t paying their bills. Sandra wants him to demand immediate payment, which he refuses to do. Both think the other is being unreasonable. Sandra feels that Carter is putting a strain on the company’s finances, while Carter thinks that Sandra’s attitude is going to alienate their clients. This conflict at work has spilled over into their private life. They seem to disagree about everything now. Their sexual relationship has all but ceased and the honeymoon appears to be over.

After several phone conversations, I invite them to dinner to talk things over. After dessert, I suggest we begin the discussion. Sandra seems sad and Carter appears to be angry, but neither speaks of how he or she feels. Instead, they criticize each other. Carter says that he feels constantly nagged and criticized. Sandra complains that Carter used to be passionate and is now sexually lazy.

After listening for a while I interject: „Listen, it’s pretty clear that you are both quite upset. Don’t you agree?“

Sandra nods. Carter, stone-faced, seems willing to hear me out. „I would like to help you both clarify why you are so upset, and to do that I suggest that we use what I call the action/feeling technique. Are you willing to try?“

They both nod. „It’s very simple. You take turns filling in the blanks in an action/feeling statement, such as: When you (action), I felt (emotion). The goal is to describe a specific action and the emotion (or emotions) that resulted. No frills, just those two facts: An action and the consequent feelings.

„Anyone want to start?“ I asked. „Trust me, it will be interesting. The point is to get an idea of each other’s emotional landscape and to explore what is going on between you. „Before we start, one more thing.“ I explained how important it was to ask for permission every time something emotionally loaded is about to be said.
After an uncomfortable minute, Sandra took the lead. „Can I tell you something I felt last night?“ she asked Carter. After he agreed, she continued. „When you disappointed me last night, I felt you did not love me anymore.“

„Whoa, Sandra, hold on!“ I interrupted. „It will take some work to turn that into an action/feeling statement. Can I try?“

Sandra nodded. „You say he disappointed you. That’s not a clear-cut action. What did he do?“

„After leading me on all evening, he rolled over and went to sleep as soon as we went to bed,“ said Sandra. „That was very disappointing and I felt he was no longer in love with me.“

„What we are after here is a simple statement of emotions following actual behavior,“ I said. „First, let’s agree that he went to sleep.“ I looked over to Carter and saw that he did not dispute Sandra’s statement. Turning to Sandra, I asked: „What exactly did you feel when he went to sleep? Let’s talk in terms of primary emotions such as sad, mad, or ashamed.“

„All three,“ she shot back.

„Well, which was first and how strong?“ I asked.

„Shame. I was ashamed of how sexually needy I was then very sad, and now I’m angry, very angry.“ Tears welled up in her eyes.

„Okay, now I’ll make an action/feeling statement out of the information you’ve given me, cutting out the accusations: ‘last night when you fell asleep instead of making love to me, I felt ashamed, very sad, and then angry.’ You see?“ Sandra nodded, drying her eyes.

Carter sat quietly with a blank expression. I turned to him. „Do you follow that, Carter?“

„Yeah, but I didn’t really...“

„I’m sure that you have a lot to say about this situation,“ I interrupted. „But right now I just want you to tell me whether you understand what Sandra said. Namely, that she was ashamed, sad, and angry because you fell asleep as soon as you went to bed last night. It’ll help clarify what’s going on between you.“

„Okay, I can see that. Can I say how I feel?“

„By all means."

„I feel that I have become Sandra’s whipping boy. She criticizes me, and then she wants me to make passionate love to her. I can’t do what she wants me to do at work or in bed, and I feel pushed around. “
Again, I explained the problem with „feeling pushed around, feeling like her whipping boy“ being non-feelings, and the need for a succinct statement relating actions to feelings. Eventually Carter pinpointed several occasions in which Sandra had made critical statements. Then he was able to articulate the feelings that he experienced: „Anger, sadness.“

They went back and forth. Sandra spoke of Carter’s easygoing financial approach and how it scared her, while Carter addressed his feelings of embarrassment when Sandra made it clear that she owned the business and received a better education than he did. Though I encouraged them both to speak only about primary emotional states—feeling sad, ashamed, guilty, angry—more complicated emotional reactions kept coming up. In only about one hour we had already gotten a lot of information out.

Then we moved on. I explained to them that complicated emotional reactions like these consist of simple, primary emotions that lead to negative intuitions. For example, Sandra’s belief that she was being sexually teased and the fear that Carter no longer loved her, and Carter’s belief that Sandra was critical of his lack of education and saw him as a sexual servant.

I told them that we were now ready to deal with these speculations, and asked each of them to state their suspicions, which I had before asked them to censor. I had just one rule, however: Listen to each other with an open mind. Instead of denying one another’s accusations, look for the truth in them, however small.

I started off with a question: „Did Sandra think of Carter as merely a sexy man without any brains?“ This was one of Carter’s fears, which she categorically denied. Still I invited her to think it over. „Sandra, let’s assume that Carter isn’t crazy and that if he believes these things, then there may be some truth to them,“ I said. „It does no good to discount what he experiences. Instead, why don’t you think of what truth there may be in his fears, however small.“

Her brow furrowed as she fell silent. Eventually she spoke. „It is true that I appreciate the way you make love to me, Carter. And it is also true that I want that kind of response from you as much as anything else that you give me. And I do think that when we make love you are wonderfully mindless. But I think you are right, that feeling becomes part of the way I see you all the time and that could be hurtful to you.“

„It is,“ said Carter.

After a few moments of uncomfortable silence, Sandra asked Carter, „Can I tell you something I am afraid you think about me?“ He agreed to hear what she had to say.

„This is very hard to say, but I’m afraid you think I’m frigid.“

„Sexually you mean?“ he asked.
“Yes,” said Sandra on the verge of tears.

He thought for what seemed a long time. Then he looked at me with puzzled confusion.

“Think about it,” I said. “Why would she get that impression?” “Do you think she is frigid or cold in some way?” I suggested.

“Well, yeah, I think she is cold sometimes,” he said, turning to Sandra. “The way you want to treat the customers is cold, in a way. And sometimes you treat me that way, too. I have thought that. But in bed you’re passionate when you want to be, or maybe I should say when you feel good about me.”

Sandra agreed. “I guess that must have been what I was picking up, that you think I am cold in the way I deal with business. I hate that part of me,” she said, again starting to cry.

Carter moved over and hugged her. “I don’t hate it, I admire it. I admire the way you take care of business. Just don’t close my account.”

They both laughed. The conversation went on as we continued to map the feelings that they both had. We looked at how they had been busy drawing destructive conclusions from each other’s actions, creating ugly emotions in both of them. I pointed out how relationships have a tendency to fall into channels or ruts that can take two possible directions, positive or negative.

Love, mutual consideration, trust, kindness, sexual abandon, and personal admiration can feed upon each other to create a good relationship just as anger, selfishness, resentment, and negative judgments feed on one another to ruin it. Sandra and Carter’s relationship had shifted from a positive state—the honeymoon period of increasing affection and passion—to a negative one. It would take energy and effort to reinstate the positive cycle and eventually settle into it, but now they knew what they felt, how strongly, and why, and that would certainly help.

Sandra and Carter went on to couple’s therapy and continued their emotional education. To this date they seem to be doing well and claim that our after-dinner conversation was the beginning of their renewed relationship.

SUMMARY

Despite what pop psychologists would have you believe, you can cause emotions in another person and vice versa. That’s why the action/feeling statement is so valuable. You can use it to clarify the feelings that are caused by your and other people’s actions without making accusations or being judgmental.

The format is simple: “When you (action), I felt (emotion).” If you correctly use action/feeling statements, you will over a period of time begin to illuminate the emotional landscape that surrounds you. You will have a tool to learn how people
feel, how strongly, and why and how these feelings relate to other people’s actions. Learning to hear and understand how we affect other people’s feelings with our actions, without becoming defensive, is very important in this process.

As you improve your emotional literacy, you will be able to sense other people’s thoughts and emotions using your intuition. You will learn to state your intuitive hunches to people and as whatever truth resides in these hunches is validated through feedback your intuition will mature into an empathic sense. This loving empathic sense is the foundation of emotionally literate behavior. With it we can confront difficult emotional situations head on and prevent them from escalating as we unlock the door to richer, more rewarding relationships.
CHAPTER 6.

THE MISTAKES WE MAKE AND WHY WE MAKE THEM

Before we move on to the third and most difficult portion of Emotional Literacy Training let us look at the emotional mistakes we make and why we make them.

We know that we make mistakes all the time. We hurt the people we love, we lie to our friends, we betray people who trust us, we try to help and then when we fail and they seem unwilling to be helped, we persecute people who need us. When we make these mistakes and we realize them, we blame ourselves or we blame our victims or we make empty apologies. Most of the time what we do does not work very well. It is much better to understand why we keep repeating these errors and then take steps to correct them.

Eric Berne, with his theory of games and scripts, gave us a very effective way to understand why we make the emotional mistakes we make and suggested a very effective method for stopping making them. Let me explain.

THE GAMES PEOPLE PLAY

If you follow people around and watch their conversations, you'll notice that some people have the same unpleasant transaction over and over. Some people get mean and wind up scaring others. Some people turn every conversation into a joke. Others always make anyone they talk with depressed. Most of us have one such pattern, sometimes more than one, which we repeat over and over. These repetitive patterns are called games.

Pay attention and notice the feelings that result for you from these conversations. In conversations where people play games, one or more people wind up feeling badly; sad, angry, scared and so on. Other conversations go smoothly and seem to make people feel good. They are probably free of games.

Either way, people are getting strokes. When people play games they exchange negative strokes. When conversations are free of games, the transactions are positive and the strokes are good. Berne discovered that there are different kinds of games. For instance, some people play depressing games like „Kick Me,“ others play angry games like „Now I’ve Got You,“ and yet others play self-destructive games like „Alcoholism.“ 29

Why do people play these games? There are different theories. One of them is that people playing a game are making a misguided attempt to get positive strokes, an attempt that backfires, producing negative strokes instead. I agree with this theory
and have come to the conclusion that people play games because they are starved for strokes and will get them at any cost, even if all they get is bad strokes.

SCRIPTS: DECISIONS THAT RULE OUR LIVES.

Though games are failed, hurtful attempts to get positive strokes, every completed game gives the player strokes even if they are negative. It also gives the player another payoff: It confirms a certain view of the world that the player has come to adopt. This enables the game player to see his life as coherent and intelligible, even though his worldview is negative.

Some typically negative worldviews are: “Nice guys always get the shaft,” or “Never trust a woman (man),” or “Mess with me and you’ll regret it.” Such a view gives the player a sense that he understands the world, rotten though it is.

Early in life, people decide on their life expectations. These decisions become narratives, blueprints for living, or scripts, similar to the scripts of movies or plays. Many people read their lines from these scripts for the rest of their lives. Every time a person plays a game to its conclusion, he or she gets a feeling of bittersweet satisfaction called the “script (or existential) payoff.” This feeling tells her that even though she is all messed up, at least she knows who she is and what the meaning of her life really is. Some very bad existential statements that nevertheless give meaning to life are „Born to lose,” „Everybody hates me,” „Nothing ever works out.”

At the end of a terrible day, we can at least say to ourselves, „I knew it. Life is hell and then you die.” And at the end of a terrible life it may reasonable to conclude: „Just as I thought. Life was hell and now I’m dying.”

Games are part of these total life patterns or scripts. The „Why don’t you? Yes, but” player has a depressive script; the „Kick Me“ player has a victim script; the angry player has a persecutor script; the Alcoholic has a tragic, self-destructive script, and so on. The games we play and the strokes they obtain for us give significant shape to our lives.

One kind of script decision we make early in life deals with our emotions. Often we head for one emotional extreme or its opposite. We cut off our feelings and wind up permanently numb, or we don’t control our feelings, and we wind up living in emotional chaos. We decide not to love and become hard and cold; or we decide to love all the way and wind up constantly disappointed. We decide to avoid anger at all costs and become totally passive, or we decide to express anger freely and become violent. We decide to stop feeling or we decide to go with every feeling we have.

To get out of this fix we have to look beyond everyday vicissitudes and instead examine the patterns of our lives. Anyone who finds himself regularly in trouble with people will, upon reflection, probably see he is caught in a repetitive series of games that form a life script usually acquired in childhood.
Take the worker who regularly gets fired. Or the woman who gets dumped by her lovers over and over again. Or the man who repeatedly gets drunk. If you are always late, always in debt, always forgetting things, always lying to cover your mistakes, or always getting taken for your last penny, chances are these endless mishaps are part of a lifelong script. There are many theories that try to explain why our lives get as messed up as they do, why we get so depressed that we lose interest in life, why we go crazy, or why we become addicts or hurt people around us. Most of these theories blame our parents. Some theories blame our parents’ genes, saying these troubles are hereditary. Others blame our parents’ behavior, claiming they mistreated us and taught us to be depressed, crazy, or drunk.

All of these theories are somewhat true for some people and very true for others. There are hereditary aspects to alcoholism, madness and depression. Some of us do learn from our parents to be depressed, dishonest, or angry, or to act crazy or to get high. Finally, some of us have had difficult childhoods that have left us confused and frightened. Still, even if there is something in our genes that makes us act as we do, and even though our childhood or later occurrences may have damaged us badly, life is still made up of daily experiences that are shaped by our daily decisions and behavior. If we change those experiences by changing our decisions and behaviors and by rectifying our mistakes, our life can be changed as well.

We can change the patterns of our lives by deciding to change our scripts and by finding meaning in a different kind of life plan, in which we are good to ourselves and other people instead of causing hurt. This is a decision in favor of emotional literacy and has a transformative effect on ourselves as well those around us.

RESCUER, PERSECUTOR, VICTIM

How do we break out of these emotional traps? Scripts are not hardwired into our brains, since they are based on our own decisions and therefore we are not stuck with them. We can change them by changing our minds and acting in new, more productive ways.

The first requirement to change our scripts is to understand the three main destructive roles that people play in their games and life scripts. These roles are the Rescuer, the Persecutor, and the Victim. They are common to all games. When we are acting out an old script, we select one of the three roles to play.

✦ Rescuers take care of people who should take care of themselves, letting them off the hook, preventing them from making their own decisions or from finding their own way.

✦ Persecutors criticize, judge, preach, and punish.

✦ Victims are incapable of making decisions, letting others run their lives and take care of them.
Why do we stick to these roles? Because we have learned to get strokes by playing them, and because the roles give meaning to our lives. Berne found that everyone who plays a game eventually plays all the roles of the game. That’s why, in Transactional Analysis, as suggested by Stephen Karpman, we arrange these three main roles in a triangle to show how people move from one role to the other in an endless merry-go-round.

In fact these roles are so important to us that each of them has been legitimized by becoming the basis for a political ideology. The Persecutor role has been adopted by conservative extremists who want to abandon all responsibility for their fellow humans and would jail and disown every person who fails to be a “good” citizen. The Rescuer role is the pet attitude of “tax-and-spend” liberals who would sacrifice all our resources taking care of other people. The Victim is the preferred role for any group whose members are embattled against society or unwilling to take care of themselves and who would prefer to be taken care of by others.

Now, this doesn’t mean that these attitudes aren’t sometimes legitimate. It is laudable to take care of other people. It is important to ask that people take care of themselves. It is reasonable to demand help when we are unable to go on. But when any of these approaches hardens into a political dogma that can’t be challenged, or an inflexible role, it becomes harmful and unproductive.

How do you tear up your script, stop the games, and reclaim your natural, healthy life? The answer is that you have to give up the roles of Rescuer, Persecutor, and Victim. But we have to be careful when we do that to make sure that we are not just jumping from one role to another. When a person tries to stop playing games, his first tendency is to move to a different role in the same game. If you are the Victim in a game of Alcoholism (that is, the helpless alcoholic), you may think you are changing by switching to the aggressive Persecutor or Rescuer role, but that is not an improvement. It is merely the same game with a rearranged cast.
Berne believed, that most of us have an inborn tendency to find happiness and live mentally healthy lives. Hence, the famous saying, „I'm OK, you’re OK.“ To make the necessary changes, each person needs to find the „OK core“ in him-or-herself and recognize it in the next person. There is no better way to find your OK core than to resolve to act differently from this moment on; to love and take care of yourself at the same time that you love and take care of others. In other words, not to Rescue, not to Persecute and not to be a Victim. And nothing will better remind us of our previous mistakes better than making a heartfelt apology and amends for them. This is why this last part of the program teaches you to apologize and make amends.

THE RESCUER, PERSECUTOR, VICTIM MERRY-GO-ROUND

Let’s look at these roles in more detail and how they work to keep us trapped in senseless unproductive revolving and revolting melodramas.

The Rescuer. A Rescue is a transactional event, part of a very common form of behavior known also as „codependence“ or „enabling.“ It usually begins with an excessive willingness to be helpful that later causes problems and conflict. We play the Rescuer when we do things for other people that we don’t want to do, or when we do more than our share. We are inspired to rescue people when they seem to be unable to take responsibility for themselves. Some people are consistent Rescuers and will rescue others at the slightest provocation, even if the other person has no real desire to be rescued. When we do this it usually is because:

1. We like to feel needed.

2. We mistake competent people who are having difficulties for helpless people who are unable to take care of themselves.

3. We were raised to believe we have to keep people happy at all costs.

Alissa is a habitual Rescuer. She learns that her long-time neighbor Richard has AIDS. The next time she sees Richard, she feels compelled to be very thoughtful, and to allude to his illness only with the utmost tact and concern. Eventually, the strain of working to make Richard avoid his painful condition and feel good makes it unpleasant for her even to see him. Alissa is vaguely aware that Richard is a self-sufficient and spiritually balanced man who doesn’t really need her intense emotional output of pity. However, Rescuing is such a deeply ingrained habit that she doesn’t know how to stop. Richard on his part can be drawn into conversations about his illness against his better judgment. Alissa’s tendency to Rescue makes her dealings with Richard exhausting, to the point that she begins to avoid him. Still, in the back of her mind, she knows she is making a bad situation worse for Richard and feels guilty about drawing Richard into the Victim role with her Rescue game.

This situation is typical for Alissa, who is constantly trying to do good for others but often is creating rather than solving problems for people. Rescues can also stem
from a subtle desire to make others indebted to us, or an inability to say no when something is asked of us. When we fear that we are caught in a Rescue of our own making it can be difficult to be sure. Here are the two very specific criteria that define a Rescue transaction.

We Rescue when we either:

- Do something we don’t want to do, or
- Do more than our share in a situation.

It is very important to distinguish rescuing as a humanitarian activity from Rescuing as an emotionally damaging role. That is why in transactional analysis we write them in lower case and capitals respectively. Clearly if someone is helpless and needs food, medical attention, or solace, we can be of help and should do so. If we come in at a crucial moment and literally save someone’s life, we have rescued him or her in a profoundly positive way. Very often, however, in cases when we are „helping“ others, we are actually causing harm, even though we believe that we are doing good.

A person who is a habitual Rescuer, always doing more than her share and engaging in activities that she doesn’t really want to participate in, is most likely creating interpersonal problems for herself and others. Unwanted Rescuing fosters selfishness, dependence, and helpless behavior on the part of the Rescued/Victim. It also takes away the Rescued person’s initiative and personal power, while it eventually creates anger and resentment in both the Rescuer and the Rescued.

**The Persecutor.** The Persecutor role is more easily spotted than the Rescue role; it can be emotionally cold or involve anger, unfavorable criticism and judgment, and a superior attitude. Again, one characteristic of these three roles is that if you play one, you will eventually play the other two. For instance, it is inevitable that Rescuers will eventually Persecute their Victims when they become overwhelmed by the needs of those they are Rescuing. They will become tired of doing more than their share in taking care of others, and develop a hatred of those they have Rescued for needing and taking so much.

When the Rescuer becomes Persecutor he is not likely to become angry at himself even though it was he who made the initial mistake by Rescuing. Instead he will be angry at those he Rescued and to whom he has given so much. After all, he will ask, „Didn’t I give everything and get nothing in return?“ Let us look at an example of how Rescuers become Persecutors of their Victims.

**ROLE SWITCHING**

Harry is an alcoholic. He drinks every day and gets drunk every weekend. His wife Helen drinks moderately, usually with him, and is a chain smoker.
After work because his work is hard and he doesn’t look forward to going home and dealing with his and Helen’s troubles he usually goes to the bar and has a couple of beers. When he gets home he is slightly drunk. He opens yet another beer and plops himself in front of the TV hoping that Helen will come home and fix something to eat.

When she gets home she cooks and eventually cleans up. Thinking that Harry’s job is very stressful she feels she should not nag him to help. Usually by the time they go to bed, Harry is in a near coma from a couple of extra beers and a joint. They haven’t had sex in years.

Harry and Helen’s finances are strained from over-spending on eating out and the interest on a loan they had to take out for legal fees from Harry’s drunk-driving conviction. Her income, which was supposed to help their quality of life, is barely enough to make ends meet.

Helen has been Rescuing and going along with Harry for years. One day she reads about codependency and decides to stop rescuing Harry. She smashes all the liquor bottles in the house, changes the lock of the front door, and tells Harry that he can’t come into the house if he is drinking. When Harry gets home from work after a few drinks at the bar, she refuses to let him in and calls the cops when he starts banging at the door. The cops arrive and eventually she lets Harry back in and the cops leave,

But Helen has had enough. She meets a nice, sober man at work and has sex with him, in part to get even with Harry. She likes this new man and a couple of months later during a fight over the dishes Helen announces to Harry that she is leaving him.

Harry is stunned by this reversal and claims to be totally victimized. He cries and begs and does not to understand. He goes to the bar and talks to the bartender. He listens to Country-Western songs about the cruelty of women. He is now a full-fledged „helpless“ Victim and Helen is his Persecutor.

Fortified by some bad advice and a lot of liquor he decides to go home and take command of the situation. This time he smashes through the locked door and threatens Helen. Harry has switched again, this time from Victim to escalated Persecuting behavior and Helen is now the terrorized Victim. She goes to stay with her mother, who is also married to an alcoholic. Her mother doesn’t want to take care of her and sides with Harry arguing that „a woman has to stand by her man.“ As a result, Helen spends a week in abject depression and insecurity, blaming herself for the entire problem.

Eventually she talks to a counselor who takes her side. She switches from Victim to Persecutor again. She files a restraining order against Harry and gets a divorce lawyer. Harry now switches from Persecutor to Victim, goes to AA, sobers up, apologizes and begs her to forgive him. Helen feels sorry for him and agrees to move
back home with him, thereby switching from roles again this time from Persecutor
to the familiar Rescuer.

After a week he still hasn’t had a drink and he feels squeaky clean and self-
righteous. He starts persecuting Helen for smoking, while he tries to persuade her
that she is also an alcoholic and should give up drinking altogether. However within
a week Harry is drinking again and the process repeats itself, only this time in a fit
of jealous rage over her now defunct affair Harry actually strikes Helen.

They circulate in the Rescue-Persecutor-Victim merry-go-round for a few more
years until Harry leaves Helen for another woman who does not mind his drinking
and finds him charming. Its Helen’s turn to be stunned by the reversal and she goes
after Harry for custody of the children. Without some help or intervention, they
both will continue to play these games with their family and friends, possibly until
they die.

Helen needs to stop this process and refuse to Rescue, Persecute, or be Victimized.
Instead of abruptly switching from Rescuer to Persecutor, she should get support
from friends or a self-help group like Al-Anon, then develop a plan of action that
takes care of her needs and helps Harry decide what he will do to take care of his.

Then she should do something that seems all wrong to most people but makes sense
from an emotional literacy point of view: She should apologize to Harry for Rescuing
him, and promise not to anymore. After all this is accomplished she may feel that
the relationship does not work and may decide to leave Harry. If she does that how-
ever it will not be a role-switch but a genuine script change. An example of how to
do this follows later in this chapter.

The Victim. As we have just seen, when people Rescue they eventually get angry.
When this happens the Victim in the game will become aware of the Rescuer’s an-
ger and contempt. The Rescued/Victim recipient of the Rescuer’s misguided gener-
osity will begin to feel demeaned, treated like a charity case. Few people enjoy being
viewed as a Victim, which is why, when people realize they are being rescued, they
feel humiliated and resentful and Persecute their Rescuer.

The above example is a real-life example of the dreary Rescue cycle. Eric Berne
used to talk of first, second, and third-degree game playing. You can tell the se-
verity of these roles from the harm eventually done to the Victim. If the Victim is
physically abused, as in the case of Helen, we have a case of second-degree Rescue
and Persecution. In more common first-degree cases, the harm to the Victim is in
the area of humiliation, hurt, and sadness. Third-degree game playing ends up in
suicide or mayhem.

Now we come to the touchy subject of the Victim’s role and his or her responsibility
for what is happening. Clearly some people are unable to defend themselves against
other people’s single-minded purpose to persecute and harm them. Examples are
plentiful; the relentless victimization of the Jews in World War II, Catholics and
Protestants in Ireland, Israelis and Palestinians, blacks in inner cities, or rape and incest victims.

Yet in some less obvious situations, the Victim contributes to the situation by accepting it the Persecution. Certainly in the case of Helen, she has been cooperating for years with what is happening to her. There is a tendency to blame women who are victims of spousal and child abuse who don’t manage to leave the terrible circumstances they fall into. Yet, when a woman is in the grips of a violent situation without the resources to extract herself, it is necessary to consider the possibility of diminished responsibility. In other cases the Victim must take as much responsibility for the situation as the Rescuer or Persecutor.

Most important is to remember that Rescuing eventually, inevitably causes anger; the Rescuer gets fed up with putting up with unfair situations or doing things that he or she does not really want to do, and the Victim gets fed up with being treated as someone who cannot take care of himself. Unavoidably, the Rescuer will persecute the Victim, and/or the Victim will persecute the Rescuer. Anger will overflow in all directions. When we find that we have been playing any of these three roles, the emotionally literate thing to do is to stop, apologize and rectify the situation.

SUMMARY

People needs strokes. In human terms that means they need love and affection. They need to love and be loved and in order to get what they need people will go to extremes similar to the extremes that people go to when they are hungry for food.

When strokes are not available people will get them by playing emotional games. Unfortunately strokes obtained from such games are largely negative and have noxious emotional side effects. People who get their strokes in that way do it an endless succession of games, all of which fit into a life plan. Each different life plan is adopted by the young child early in life and calls for the acceptance of a set of games and roles each of which generates a different kind of emotionally costly set of emotional mistake. The roles are the Persecutor, the Rescuer or the Victim and when people play games the switch from one role to the other in an endless emotional merry-go-round of unhappiness.
CHAPTER 7.

TAKING RESPONSIBILITY

There is at the present moment in history a great interest in apologies. From high officials or whole governments who are apologizing to people of their own or other countries, to everyday, garden variety apologies delivered at home, on the street and at work.

Apologies and atonement are as old as guilt. The Jewish faith establishes a yearly, week-long period of self-examination and atonement. The Catholic religion makes apology to and forgiveness from God a principal aspect of its catechism. AA has devoted a whole step in its 12 step recovery program to making apologies and amends. Apologies have become the subject of scholarly discussion. In too many cases, however, these apologies have become rituals, which though arguably bringing peace of mind to the wrongdoer, seldom have the result of righting the wrongs that people inflict on each other.

The mistakes we make, often swept under the rug, have a growing, lasting, and corrosive effect on our relationships. After years of accumulated emotional damage, many relationships become cold and distant or simply end. To bring about real and lasting change in a relationship that has been allowed to devolve owing to emotional errors, we have to take responsibility for our part in the process. After all, we can become receptive to relationships by opening our hearts, and we can learn the outlines of the emotional landscape we live in, but the inevitable emotional damage of any dynamic relationship cannot be fixed between people without an effort to define and admit the faults and errors committed. The problem is that very few people are emotionally skilled enough to apologize sincerely and non-defensively. In short, most people don't know how to say: „I am sorry.”

The final emotional literacy skill I teach concerns the fine art of acknowledging one’s mistakes and asking, even begging, for forgiveness. The thought of making a deeply felt apology strikes terror in the heart of the average person. Losing face, eating crow—all bring back memories of humiliating school-yard struggles and confrontations with accusing parents. In addition we have learned to believe that backing down is weak and humiliating. Yet an emotionally mature person will admit mistakes and apologize for any harm caused by his or her actions. I can use an example from my own life to illustrate this point.

PERSONAL CASE IN POINT

I had just arrived in Chicago from Paris and went immediately to a hotel, where I had made reservations. I was exhausted by the flight and ready for a hot bath and a long night’s sleep. The clerk, a gentle young woman, looked at her book and after some searching politely shook her head. „I’m sorry, Dr. Steiner, but we have no res-
ervation for you today. Your reservation is for tomorrow and we have no rooms to-
night.“ I was outraged by this news. „But I specifically called weeks ago...“ „Yes, and I see here that we listed you for tomorrow,“ she insisted. „Well, that was your mis-
take!“ I hissed.

As I carried on loudly I began to realize in the back of my mind that I was wrong. I had assumed that the reservation would be for the day after I left France, but had forgotten that I would in fact arrive the same day on an East-to-West flight from Europe to the United States. Meanwhile, the clerk had called someone on the phone and was explaining the situation. After a minute she hung up and said, „Dr. Stei-
nner, we will try to get you a room, but...“ At that point I wasn’t listening. I had been teaching emotional literacy in Europe, and I knew that I had to practice what I preached, even if it meant the possibility of ending up on the street.

„Can I apologize to you?“ I asked, my face flushed with embarrassment.

She looked up, puzzled.

„I just realized that you were right,“ I continued. „When I called to make my reser-
vation, I was assuming that I would arrive the day after my departure from Paris.“

„That’s okay,“ she said. „This happens all the time, people don’t realize that there is no time difference when they come back. But people never apologize."

„Well, I owe you an apology for the way I spoke to you before,“ I insisted. „Will you accept it?“

„Oh, that’s all right,“ she said looking back down at her book.

„No, no, seriously, will you accept my apology?“

She looked at me and smiled. „Sure, why not? I appreciate it,“ she said. „People ex-
pect us to apologize for our mistakes but rarely apologize for theirs.“

As you might guess, this story has a happy ending. She found a room for me and be-
fore long I was comfortably asleep. I had practiced what I preached and felt good because of it. I had a room and had enjoyed a refreshingly honest interaction with a gracious young woman, all because of a mistake.

OBSTACLES TO TAKING RESPONSIBILITY

There are a number of obstacles that must be overcome before we can take respon-
sibility and make a heartfelt apology.

1. Admitting to ourselves that we have made a mistake: Deciding that we have made a mistake is very difficult for most of us because we then become vulnerable to harsh criticism from our Critical Parent. Typical of the criticism you might hear in your mind are some of the following:


• „You fool, what a stupid mistake to make, and then you had to make an even worse fool of yourself by getting into an argument.“

• „Right, as usual you simply don’t know better.“ or

• „You have always been crazy, see what you have done now!“

Remember, the goal of the Critical Parent is to make you feel inadequate and not okay, and when you admit a mistake to yourself you give your Critical Parent a perfect opportunity to do just that.

2. Admitting our mistake to others: As if admitting mistakes to ourselves is not enough, admitting to someone else that we have made a mistake makes us vulnerable to their anger and disappointment as well as the further scrutiny and wrath of our Critical Parent. This can be a big, humiliating obstacle, but one we must learn to overcome. Admitting our mistakes is a powerful, cleansing experience, one that everyone with any claims to emotional literacy needs to experience.

3. Feeling and conveying true regret: This is where having an open heart will be indispensable, for even if we know and admit to a mistake we have made, we don’t necessarily recognize or regret the damage we may have caused. That is why this phase of Emotional Literacy Training comes last: It is hard to apologize for emotional damage we don’t understand. Empathy has to be developed before we can recognize the pain that we cause others with our actions. Without that recognition, it is hard to assume responsibility. Through the empathy developed in this work, we can see how our actions may have made another person feel sad, ashamed, angry, or afraid. Only when we really see that will we be inclined to regret our actions.

4. Finally, admitting that amends are needed: Taking responsibility for a mistake usually means making amends. Amends means changing our behavior and even making reparations. When we make amends we no longer do the things that have hurt others. We stop playing the role we have played in the past. Making amends is an important aspect of obtaining forgiveness. By making amends, we put our money where our mouths are, as it were, and in many cases forgiveness would not be possible without them.

By following the advice presented here you will understand what it means to take responsibility for your actions. You will learn how to admit—to yourself as well as the victim(s) of your mistake—that you have done something wrong and that you wish to do what is necessary to set things right.

Remember, we all make mistakes, including emotional ones. Learning emotional literacy helps us avoid mistakes from the beginning and to rectify those we make as quickly as possible.
EMOTIONALLY LITERATE TRANSACTION #10.
Apologizing for Our Rescues

Remedying a Rescue. Tempting though it is to want to do things for others, hard though it may be to say „No,” learning not to Rescue is hugely important for anyone who wants to preserve and nurture meaningful relationships. When we find ourselves playing the role of Rescuer in a repetitive cycle, it is important to rectify our mistake by recognizing it, stopping, and apologizing. Here is how it is done:

„When I (describe action), I Rescued you because:

(1) I did not really want to do it, or
(2) because I knew that I was doing more than my share.

I apologize and will do better next time. Do you accept my apology?“

This needs to be handled with care. Finding out that someone has been Rescuing you can be quite humiliating, especially if you weren't asking to be Rescued. Also, learning that someone close to you no longer wants to do something he or she has been doing for some time can feel like abandonment. It is important to approach this gently and very important to take proper responsibility for the mistake of Rescuing while being as nurturing as possible.

To stop Rescuing, you have to clarify what you want or do not want to do, and what is fair. And of course, you have to decide exactly what action of yours constitutes a Rescue. The best way to do that is to ask yourself questions about what you are doing and whether you should or should not keep doing it. For example you may need to ask yourself:

- Do I want to continue this conversation?
- Do I want to have sex?
- Do I want to fix the car?
- Do I want to go to the ball I game?
- Do I want to spend time with my husband's family?
- Do I want to cook tonight?

Sometimes your Rescue may involve doing more than your share. If that is the case, you have to ask yourself what constitutes a fair share of the effort involved in a relationship. The questions you ask yourself will be similar to these:

- Is it fair for me to do the dishes if Mary cooks, or should I also sweep the floor?
- Is it fair that I always initiate sex?
• Should I always pay for dinner when we go out?

• Is it fair that I always pick up the kids from school?

• Sharon has been talking to me about her problems with her sister for months now. Should I let her go on or tell her I am bored with this subject?

In other words, you have to learn to know what you want to do or what you think amounts to a fair distribution of a relationship’s responsibilities. Let me clarify what I mean using Harry and Helen’s example:

• When Helen cleans up the dishes because Harry says to leave them until next morning, she is doing something she hates, so she is Rescuing.

• When she cooks dinner every night while Helen watches TV, she is doing more than her share—and therefore Rescuing—even if she likes to cook and is willing.

When stopping a rescue there is a tendency to overcompensate and end up Persecuting. Therefore while the Rescue must be stopped it is important to keep a nurturing loving attitude. To stop Rescuing needs to be a loving act—towards the other and oneself—and there is a fine line to be learned and drawn between not Rescuing and Persecuting. To the Victim who is no longer being Rescued the difference is like night and day, either devastating or empowering.

**EMOTIONALLY LITERATE TRANSACTION # 11.**

**Apologizing for Persecution**

The role of Persecutor is more easily recognized and obvious than the Rescuer role. There is no need to explain why apologies for persecuting are important, most of us realize that persecuting people is wrong. There are some people, however, who are sure that they it is their duty to correct other people’s behavior, in a harsh manner, if needed. Some people are habitual Persecutors, stuck in an angry, blaming role; nothing works, everything is somebody else’s fault, and they are constantly angry at something or someone. When we persecute we are irritable and testy. We may insult, mock, discount, ignore, interrupt, yell, lecture, or constantly contradict others. Or, we may lie. These are all power plays, and Persecution is essentially a matter of using power plays to control others.

Persecution can be very obvious or very subtle or somewhere in between. Rather than being deeply stuck in the role of Persecutor, however, most people will switch from normal, reasonable behavior into the Persecutor role for a few transaction which the Persecutor assumes are justified and even beneficial. Then, unaware of the effects of his actions, the Persecutor returns to normal as if nothing had happened. In a game ridden, script directed life style people will absorb these incidents, believe that they have dealt with them, and go on to the next episode of the melodrama; that is what emotional numbing is all about. But if we are to live well-
managed emotional lives, we cannot let these injuries pass and we need to set them straight.

The remedying of Persecution follows the same pattern as the Remedying of Rescues. Let me give an example:

MESSY AND NEAT

Beth has just moved in with Richard. Beth is neat and orderly. She is also very concerned about her possessions. For her, all her record albums, every book, her clothes, even her magazines, are little treasures that she has carefully picked out and preserved, through her many moves from apartment to apartment. Richard is an unrepentant creator of chaos. He lives in a pile of papers and boxes of new gizmos with clothing strewn all about.

Richard unwittingly tends to put his stuff on top of Beth’s stuff. This makes Beth furious. She is very detail-oriented and always notices where she places her things. She would never throw her coat on top of Richard’s shoes or crumple his new magazines. She is also under a lot of stress because of conflicts with her boss and concern over her depressed brother. She finds herself becoming more and more angry at Richard’s carelessness.

Because she is not sure how to approach the problem, she often puts on a mockingly furious tone when she complains to Richard “Oh darling ... look whose greasy car manual I found on top of my favorite pumps.... Naughty, naughty.”

In response, Richard feeling somewhat guilty glances in her direction, vaguely aware that he’s being reprimanded. But the problem continues. Eventually, Beth becomes very angry. „Damn it, Richard, why do you do this? Look at my shoes, they’re crushed! I searched for almost an hour for this sweater of mine that you threw in with your laundry! Leave my things alone!“

„They’re all over my room,“ Richard retaliates, defensively.

„Your room? If I can’t put my things down on one chair in our living room, then I’m sorry I moved in with you. Maybe I should move out so you can have your room back.“

In the back of her mind, Beth is growing uneasy about the harpy like posture she has drifted into. What went wrong? From an emotionally literate position, here is what went wrong: She should have dealt with her feelings from the beginning in a calm tone, using an action/feeling statement, after getting Richard’s attention. Instead, she started to complain timidly with a faintly critical joke, which only confused Richard and didn’t get her message across. Essentially, she Rescued him, going along with his messiness. Her complaints became hostile when she got fed up with being ignored.
Here is the approach that might work better:

Realizing her mistake, Beth asks Richard when he will be free to talk. He suggests after lunch, and when the time comes, the dialogue proceeds like this:

„Richard, I want to apologize about something.“

Richard who expected her to Persecute him is surprised „What?“

„You know how we’ve been fighting when you do something to my things that I don’t like.“

Richard raises his eyebrows and makes a „tsk“ sound, indicating that he is well aware of the „fights,“ which to him feel more like blitzkriegs over trivia.

„Well, I believe that I’ve been persecuting you unfairly. I never really sat down and calmly asked you to do things differently, and I guess I can’t expect you to change your ways overnight. I’ve been really frustrated and upset about my boss and my brother, and I’m probably visiting some of my frustration on you. I’m sorry for being so hostile and impatient.“

She waited for Richard’s acknowledgment and acceptance of her apology and then said: „I still want you to be careful what you do with my things. Would you please make an effort?“

With this approach his response might well be, „Okay I didn’t realize how serious you are about your things, I should have listened more closely to you. I’ll try to do better. I apologize for calling our living room ‘my room.‘“

**APOLOGIES AND GUILT**

Apologies are usually associated with guilt especially if they are apologies for persecuting attacking or directly harming someone. The word „guilt“ can refer to a judgment as in: „The defendant is guilty!“ or it can refer to an emotion. However, as an emotion, guilt has come to be seen as relatively useless in that it does not necessarily lead to any positive results. A person’s feelings of guilt and being „not OK“ is not likely to bring important changes or deliver heart-felt amends. The situation between Beth and Richard is not improved by Beth’s guilt about being mean or Richards guilt about his treatment of her things. That sort of emotion comes from the Child ego state; to be reliable changes and amends need to be originated in the Adult ego state.

However, guilt is not the only reason why one would apologize. Regret, an emotion akin to sadness rather than guilt, coupled with a realization that we bear responsibility in another person’s suffering is far more likely to bring the changes in behavior and amends that can generate true forgiveness. Unlike guilt, which causes most people to be defensive and not to want to apologize regret motivates the person in the opposite direction, toward apology and making things right. The most effective
apologies are manifestations of sadness and regret experienced by the Child coupled with an Adult program of amends. Beth is sad about the way her anger has hurt Richard and regrets her Rescue. Richard, when he finally realizes that Beth things are very important to her, regrets that he has made her unhappy with his messiness. Both have felt guilty before to no avail, they are much more likely to make relevant changes under the influence of regret.

The question arises how to help a person replace feelings of guilt with feelings of regret. Regret is based on being aware of the discomfort of pain that we have caused another person. Beth needed to become aware of how her anger affected Richard and Richard needed to become aware of Beth’s feelings about her things. Inviting the person to move their attention from their guilty feelings to the feelings of sadness, disappointment, hopelessness or pain that the other experienced is usually effective way to accomplish the desired change.

Some have argued that the more enlightened path is to forgive unilaterally, to turn the other cheek as it were, without need for an apology. Others may argue that the emphasis on apologies encourages the Victim role and ultimately reinforces game behavior. Both views have their grain of truth. It is true that some are able to forgive unconditionally but most of us are not quite so ego-less, and when hurt need some sort of justice and redress. The fact is also that there are people who gladly occupy and even seek the Victim role in the Drama Triangle and may not be quite deserving of an apology. But there are also others who are true victims of other people’s misdeeds and they deserve the apologies that they need.

To repeat, for most relationships to flourish and move forward it is essential that we ongoingly correct the errors we commit; we are fallible and human and sometimes give in to our game playing side. When they are not corrected these errors add up and can drag down and eventually kill the best of relationships. A complete apology is a transaction that constitutes a corrective experience.

REQUIREMENTS AND ERRORS OF AN APOLOGY

Three points that make an apology effective should be kept in mind:

1. Both parts of the apology transaction (apology and response) are required for a complete apology.

For an apology transaction to be complete it has to be fully heard, contemplated and responded to. All too often an apologetic statement is deemed to be sufficient and the assumption is made that once uttered, an apology should and will be accepted by a good-natured, forgiving person. This implies that an apology is a one-sided process when in fact it is a transactional cycle between two people. When a person hurts another, apologizes in an offhanded way and the apology is routinely accepted without reflexion, the transaction is not healing and can even be noxious. If this cycle repeats itself, the participants are locked in the drama triangle and each apology, instead of producing healing results, supports both person’s scripts.
In this view there is no place for a one-sided apology no matter how well delivered. If there is no response the apology is incomplete in the transactional sense. There may be some value to a one sided apology but that is not the subject matter of this section; an apology transaction which effectively rectifies an emotional mistake when completed.

2. An apology to be effective has to describe the offense. An injury can be described in terms of the actions that caused the injury. In order to work, the apology has to specify an act which was perceived as being injurious by the victim, even if it was not meant to injure.

Some times people apologize for an action that was not problematic, overlooking the action that was. John, at a staff meeting repeatedly ignores Mary’s statements. Eventually he offers coffee or tea to every one except Mary. Later she complains bitterly to him about his behavior.

John: „I apologize, Mary.”

Mary: „What are you I apologizing for?”

John: „For not offering you coffee. Will you forgive me?”

Mary: (thinking) „Actually I don’t particularly care about the coffee I need you to apologize for the way you kept ignoring the suggestions I made at the meeting. ”

With this Mary has described John’s offending actions. Now John knows what to apologize for if he wants to deal with Mary in an effective way.

3. In addition to a description of the offending behavior the apology needs to include a recognition of its magnitude. Accordingly, apologies can be said to be first, second or third degree.

John: „Did I really? I don’t think that it was that bad but I am sorry.”

Mary: „It was that bad and has been a lot worse than you seem to think. I need you to recognize that.”

At this point John needs to examine the situation a bit more seriously. He wants to deliver a first degree apology about coffee and cookies. Mary has a larger, second degree offence in mind. Can he accept that he has been seriously discounting and thereby causing Mary feelings of anger, sadness embarrassment and hopelessness? If he does he will acknowledge the magnitude of his discount, if he demurs he may fail to satisfy Mary.

In addition we need to keep in mind the following two possible errors:
APOLOGY ERROR #1: Giving lip service

Lately the importance of apology seems to have gained well deserved recognition. Alcoholics Anonymous long ago listed making amends as one of the twelve steps of its program. Recently, numerous articles and books have been written about them (Reference) People who are in frequent contact with the public, such as flight attendants and bank clerks, are taught to apologize as a way to quiet angry customers, when necessary.

People apologize all the time, but that does not necessarily mean that they are asking for anything or expecting a response. Very often the apology is a ritual, basically:

„Sorry,“
„No problem“

For the most banal offences such a bumping into someone or occasionally interrupting while somebody is speaking this kind of a transaction suffices to remedy the offence and exchanges a couple of strokes so as no to appear to be rude.

But beyond that type of extremely minor example, when someone does something to injure the other, more will be needed to restore harmony and bring the relationship back to a cooperative, healthy footing.

Apologies and asking for forgiveness can be made with a variety of non-productive attitudes:

* An unemotional, even legalistic appraisal of one’s wrongdoing. It sounds good but may fail to satisfy:

Bill: (seriously) „I showed lack of judgment. I may have misled you and for that I apologize“

* A guilt laden self-rebuke in response to Critical Parent which somehow manages to avoid responsibility:

John: (weeping) „I was weak, and gave in to the Devil, I deserve eternal damnation. I am, oh, so sorry!“

* An apology can also be hypocritical and managing to make light of the injury it has caused:

Mark: (smiling) „I know, I know I am so terrible, I am sorry.”

These different transactions are distinguished with respect to covert content. Each one reflects a different attitude (rational, self hating, smug.) These attitudes have their source in a defensive Child ego state. Again, the attitude and coherent emo-
tional content required for an effective apology is heartfelt, empathic, emotional re-
response to the harm or pain that his behavior has caused.

Harry, for instance, apologized with self-hate, often and profusely to Helen. How-
ever, he barely realized what he was saying and certainly was only minimally sin-
cere. He knew it pacified Helen, so he went ahead and apologized whenever he got in trouble with her. She would accept his apology but within days- maybe hours-she felt as if she had been cheated. An apology has to be heartfelt and has to be for spe-
cific behavior, or it is meaningless and ultimately ineffective. Words alone do not change things or soothe the aggrieved party. And, of course, an apology that is not followed by a change of behavior will quickly prove meaningless.

APOLOGY ERROR #2: Blaming the Victim

When we discover that we have been Rescuing someone, it is easy to get mad at him. Helen is an example of someone, who, after much Rescuing, was furious at Harry. Attacking another person because we are angry is rarely the right response and is certainly the wrong one when you decide to stop being a Rescuer. Getting angry can hurt your relationship with the person you have been Rescuing, which is why it is important to stop Rescuing before your anger builds up. Do this with a gentle and nurturing explanation rather than an abrupt withdrawal. Above all, do not blame the Victim for your mistake. Don’t forget, Rescuing is definitely a mistake on your part and not necessarily on the part of the Rescued/Victim who may not know that you are Rescuing and may not even want to be Rescued.

EMOTIONALLY LITERATE TRANSACTION #12: Apologizing for playing the victim role

Last but certainly not least in this catalogue of corrective procedures is the Remedy-
ing of Victim behavior.

One way to regain some power when we feel completely defeated and powerless is to play games in the role of the Victim. One of the first games that Eric Berne discov-
ered and which illustrates that principle beautifully is „Why don’t you? Yes, but.“

In this game a person in the Victim role hooks one or more people into giving advice on a problem that he considers hopeless. For example, Bruce hates his job and his boss and is sure that his coworkers hate him. What is he to do? He asks a number of his friends. They try to help:

Ted: „Why don’t you quit and find another job?“

B: „Yes that’s a good idea, but there are no jobs that pay as well as this one.“

Ned: „Why don’t you get a union mediator and work it out with your boss?“
B: „Yes, I thought of that but the union mediator right now is a woman, and she
doesn’t understand these kinds of problems.“

Fred: „Why don’t you go to a meditation weekend and develop a white light around
you that protects you from harm?“

B: „Yeah sure, have you seen how much those weekends cost?“

Ted: „I guess you’re right; it’s a pretty hopeless situation. If I was in your place I’d
want to kill myself.“

B: „I know there’s no use. I guess you guys can’t help me. It’s really up to me, isn’t
it? Let’s get drunk.“

At this point everybody is depressed. Bruce is gloating over his power to bring down
a roomful of drinking buddies, and his gloomy view of the world is vindicated. The
next day, Bruce bought the book Achieving Emotional Literacy and read about the
Victim role. He realized that he had a tendency to be depressed and feel hopeless
and that the best way to get out of this role is to apologize. The next time he got to-
gether with his buddies, he startled everybody by saying:

B: „Listen guys, I want to apologize about something.“ Everyone is stunned into si-
lence but listening. „I feel that when I start complaining about my job and asking
for advice and not taking it, that I am really acting like a powerless victim and I re-
alize it must be a bummer. I apologize. I’m not going to do that anymore.“

Ted: „What is this, twelve-step amends or something?“

B: „Something like that. I am serious though, and I want you guys to accept my
apology. Will you?“

EMOTIONALLY LITERATE TRANSACTION #13:
Accepting and apology.

After hearing an apology and thoughtful soul-searching, we can either:

• Grant forgiveness,

• Postpone pending additional amends, or

• Deny it.

To be forgiven is a gift, and it cannot always be granted. Forgiveness depends en-
tirely on whether our hearts respond in a forgiving manner to the apology, and it is
not possible or advisable to force the heart in matters of love, hate, or forgiveness.
Consequently, it is as important in emotionally literate relationships that weproperly grant or decline forgiveness, as that we ask for it.
There is obviously a great deal of skill involved in making a heartfelt apology. Few people realize, however, that there is an equally important skill involved in accepting, or rejecting, an apology once it is given.

In the case of Mary and John above John’s initial apology (about coffee and cookies at the staff meeting, remember?) does not work. How does she handle her co-worker’s apology without accepting it just yet?

**ACCEPTING APOLOGY ERROR #1: Forgiving too easily**

Mary might say, „No problem, that’s okay.“ By doing this he is probably trying to avoid the humiliation of feeling patronized. Or she may even be trying to Rescue John from his responsibilities to be civil.

It is best not to do that. An apology doesn’t accomplish much emotional healing if it is accepted without reflection. If someone gives you a perfunctory apology, and you say, „No problem,“ you will probably feel just as badly as before. You have probably accepted the apology because you have learned what’s socially expected of you. Even if the apology is heartfelt and sincere, you can render it useless by accepting it in a perfunctory way. The emotionally appropriate response is always to think about the apology and decide whether you want to accept it or not. If the apology doesn’t work it is important to decline it.

**ACCEPTING APOLOGY ERROR #2 Bashing the Righteous**

Another error is what I call „Bashing the Righteous.“ Let’s go back to Mary and John. Let’s say that John earnestly apologizes to Mary for discounting her at meetings. Mary now sees an opportunity to get even, to hurt him the way that he has been hurt.

„Well, it’s about time you apologized,“ she might say. „I resent it and I am very angry with you. You are such a bastard sometimes!“

If you are trying to develop emotional literacy, this won’t do either. If Mary is angry she can use an action/feeling statement to deal with his reaction: „It makes me angry that you spoke to me the way you did. I also feel embarrassed. But I appreciate your apology. Please don’t do it again.“

**ACCEPTANCE OF APOLOGY WITH CONDITIONS**

The injured person hears the apologetic statement but his heart does not open. Perhaps something more is needed perhaps nothing can be done at this time.

Mary: „I am sorry but you don’t seem to really understand how difficult your behavior is for me. I am afraid that I can’t accept your apology... I need more than just words to feel better.” Thinking further she says: „I would appreciate it if you apolo-
gized to me in the meeting and asked the other people to remind you if they see you do it again. Can you do that?"

**EMOTIONALLY LITERATE TRANSACTION #14: Rejection of an apology**

Sometimes apologies don’t work:

* Diana’s heart was broken when her fiancé called off their engagement. She was devastated and humiliated. Days later he came to apologize, but she was much too furious and hurt to accept. It was only months later, after several long discussions about his decision to break off their engagement, that she was finally able to accept the apology she needed.

* A victim of a long string of large impulsive purchases, Peter is unable to forgive his wife. He needs a much more extensive apology for the years of financial worries she has caused him and some concrete assurances of her intention to change her ways. There may be nothing she can do to remedy her mistakes.

* Andres apologizes to Claude for accepting an invitation to a dinner party on his behalf, without asking him. Claude is beginning to feel that Andres is ignoring his distaste for social outings with new people. He always thinks each party is an exception. He refuses the apology because Andres does not seem to care that he always puts Claude in awkward situations.

An apology does not work usually because the injury was too large to be dispelled by a simple apology. Perhaps the victim needs an explanation or some form of amend. For example, the man who has been financially damaged by his wife needs for her to explain how she has changed and that she will get a job to bring them back into solvency. Claude needs Andres to admit that he has accepted invitations for Claude hoping to break him of his shyness. He promises to stop doing that and to check with Claude about every social event that involves both of them. It is important to keep in mind that the ultimate purpose of an apology is to give the Victim a chance to feel better about the way he or she has been hurt.

The above examples illustrate that it would be an error to accept an apology if it doesn’t truly make you feel better. You should explain to the person apologizing why it falls short, if you can. Then the person can try to apologize in a way that acknowledges the true nature of the mistake. But if the effort fails the apology should be gently declined in favor of a renewed effort to make it work.

**CASE STUDY Both Sides of Apology**

Here is an example of a properly delivered and accepted apology: Laura frequently found herself having unwanted sex with her husband Brian. He would tell her that he had a tough day at work and needed her, or that he was all wound up and could
not get to sleep if she did not have sex with him. If she refused him, he would become angry or pout. At that point, no matter how Laura felt, she would give in.

Laura consulted me to change her relationship with Brian. She loved him, she said, but she felt as though he was taking advantage of her. Lately she had started resenting him and getting angry at irrelevant little things. She thought that some emotional literacy training might be helpful and she came to me for the tools. After talking to her for a while, I could see that Laura was a habitual Rescuer, not just with Brian, but in all sorts of situations.

With Brian, her worse Rescue was that even when she did not want to have sex with him, she did it anyway. Now she was feeling used and wanted to persecute him to the point of considering the possibility of leaving him. I explained to her the importance of taking responsibility for her actions and explained how to frame an apology for being a Rescuer. I told her that she needed to stop Rescuing in all sorts of places but that it would be a good idea to start with Brian.

Here is what happened next: Friday evening Laura told Brian that she would like to have a special Saturday night dinner to talk about something very important. Brian seemed wary and somewhat alarmed.

„I want to talk about something I’ve been thinking about,“ said Laura. „I’ll make an early dinner and we can have a relaxed conversation.“

Saturday evening came, and Laura, after they had finished eating, took a deep breath and began. „Brian, I have been feeling bad about something between us, may I tell you about it?“

Brian shrugged. Although he smiled, he was scared. „Well, that seems to be why we’re here,“ he said warily.

„Okay,“ Laura began, „I am worried that you are going to be upset about what I am going to say. Here it goes,“ she gulped. „I feel bad that I’ve been making love with you lately and some of the times I didn’t really feel like it.“ She eyed Brian nervously, trying to gauge his response. Seeing nothing in his face she continued, „Maybe I didn’t make it clear enough that I didn’t want to. I guess I gave you mixed messages, and I’m sorry.“

Brian erupted. „What are you trying to say? You don’t want to sleep with me?“

„No, I’m not saying I never want to have sex, I just mean that I feel that we have sex when you are in the mood, not when I am, and I don’t want to go on making love when I’m not in the mood. I’m not blaming you for what I’ve done up until now, going along with your wishes and ignoring mine. I am trying to take responsibility for that, but I also want to change things.“

„Well, it sounds like you’re not attracted to me, as if I’m your sexual charity case...“
„Sometimes I’m tired or preoccupied or just not feeling sexual. I just don’t feel like having sex.”

„Well, are you ever in the mood? It seems to me that if I didn’t start things, you never would.“

„It’s true I don’t usually think to initiate sex, but sometimes when you do I really like it. Other times I’m tired and not really into it. I don’t want to continue having sex like that, when I don’t really feel like it. It makes me ashamed of myself and sometimes even angry at you. Maybe if we didn’t have sex when I’m not in the mood, I might be in the mood more often.“

Brian listened quietly as Laura continued.

„The point is that it’s not your fault. I take responsibility for my decisions to go along. But I want to do things differently from now on. I just want things to be good between us, as good as they can be, because I love you.“

Brian looked at her warily, „Well, I’m just going to leave you alone. I don’t want to be your sexual charity project. If you want to make love, you can let me know.“

With that, he walked over the couch and turned on the baseball game. Laura was very upset, though I had warned her that Brian might be quite defensive at first. Once the initial shock subsided, however, he would probably relax and accept her feelings and proposal. She went to the bedroom where she knew she wouldn’t be heard and called her sister up to unburden herself about the upsetting situation. Then she read a novel in bed. She decided to let the dishes wait until morning. When Brian came to bed, she pretended to be asleep to avoid a confrontation. He got into bed without touching her at all and, after lying awake awhile, fell asleep. Once she heard his regular breathing pattern, Laura moved over and held him close until she fell asleep. She was worried but kept reminding herself that things would get better.

In the morning, Brian, who had noticed that Laura cuddled with him throughout the night, was aloof, reading the paper and drinking coffee. Then he unexpectedly left, announcing last-minute Sunday plans with some male friends. When Brian came home that evening, he handed Laura a small, scraggly bunch of wildflowers he had picked at the last minute on the way home. She kissed him appreciatively. For a moment Brian wanted to grab Laura and kiss her passionately. At that point he stopped himself, feeling vaguely humiliated.

She sensed his turmoil and went into the kitchen to fix some tea. Brian sat on the couch, wrestling with his feelings of humiliation. After all, he thought, she’s not blaming me. He remembered a few times early in the relationship when she had wanted to have sex and he was too tired. He decided to try not to take the situation personally. „Let’s eat out tonight,“ he announced impulsively.
At dinner Brian said, „Can I tell you how I feel?“ Laura agreed eagerly. „When you told me about the unwanted sex last night I felt angry at first, and then scared that you weren’t attracted to me anymore. Then I became sad that we have been having sex without you enjoying it。“

Laura nodded. Brian continued. „I accept your apology for going along. Let’s see if we can have sex only when we both want it.“ That night, after dinner, they kissed in bed. Brian decided not to push for intercourse, and Laura fell asleep in his arms. He felt sexually needy and lay awake for a while, but it was reassuring to feel Laura nuzzle against him in her sleep. Eventually when he could not fall asleep he moved to the living room and read until he fell asleep on the couch. Next morning making and effort to keep a loving attitude he explained why he had left their bed. It took a few months before the tensions between Laura and Brian subsided. Gradually, however, he accepted her sexual rhythm and got over his feelings of embarrassment and abandonment. She, for her part, made an effort to take sexual initiative, especially on weekends when she had more energy. Through, conversations and compromise, they got out of the destructive Rescue pattern that was secretly threatening their sex life and, ultimately, their marriage. Their sex life improved.

EMOTIONALLY LITERATE TRANSACTION # 15:
Begging Forgiveness. An emotionally literate way of apologizing for an action that has deeply hurt another person

Garden variety emotional errors occur frequently. Because of that, it is a part of emotional housekeeping to keep track of them and clean them up when needed. Sometimes, however, we make hurtful mistakes that can cause long-term damage. In that case it is important to make a major apology and even, if necessary, beg for forgiveness.

CASE STUDY Begging Forgiveness

A dramatic example of begging for forgiveness is the story of Rose and Edgar, two sixtysomething-olds who were about to celebrate their fortieth wedding anniversary when they attended one of my emotional literacy workshops. After we discussed the power of apologies, Edgar declared that he needed to do some emotional work with Rose.

After getting her agreement, he explained why: Thirty-five years ago, on the evening of the birth of their son, he’d sex with another woman.

It happened right after he saw the baby and visited Rose in the recovery room. He left the hospital late at night, but was too excited to go directly home. Instead, strangely energized, he went into a neighborhood bar to have a drink. As he sat enjoying a double whisky, he noticed a young woman coworker. He told her about his new son and offered to buy her a drink. One drink led to another and before he knew it, they were in her apartment having sex.
When he left the next morning, Edgar was overcome with guilt. He felt terrible that he had cheated on his wife and impulsively told Rose what he had done. Rose was devastated by the news. Even though he assured his wife that he had been stupidly drunk and never wanted to see the woman again, Rose was inconsolable and unforgiving. For the next thirty-five years, virtually every argument between them contained references to the incident. Every time Rose felt Edgar was taking her for granted, or did not give her the attention she should have, she would bring up the dreaded incident. They were both very distressed about this. After all these years the incident was still like a thorn in both of their sides, one that they had pretty much given up trying to remove.

On this occasion, Edgar thought that he needed to do something he had never done: Take full responsibility for his infidelity and beg Rose for forgiveness. He did this in the most touching way. In front of the entire group, Edgar got on his knees and grasped Rose’s hand. With tears in his eyes he began to speak. „Rose,“ he asked, „May I speak to you about something?“ „Yes,“ she agreed. „Rose, I know that I have apologized a hundred times about this and I have complained that it doesn’t seem to work.“

She nodded.

„I realize from this discussion that even though I apologized, my apologies have been hollow, and I am not surprised that they haven’t worked.“

Again, she nodded.

„I understand why. It is because I have not really acknowledged how much I hurt you. I really didn’t want to accept that I had hurt you so much. So I made excuses and never stopped to experience your pain.“ He wiped his eyes and asked, „May I apologize now?“

At this point there wasn’t a dry eye in the room, including Rose’s. She nodded again, this time warmly, covering his hands with hers. „Rose, after all these years, I realize how much what I did hurt you. I am so sorry that I did it and so sorry that it took me so long to realize the extent of your pain. Would you please forgive me?“

Rose took a long time to think. Finally she broke into a tearful smile and agreed. „Yes I do, and I must say that I believe now that I have been harsh in my anger. I have always through in the back of my mind that you did it because you felt potent and manly after we had our first son. But I can see that you understand how much that hurt me and I forgive you.” They hugged, surrounded by a smiling group of fellow emotional literacy enthusiasts.

One year later I happened to meet Edgar. I asked him how things were. He told me that they had just had a wonderful anniversary celebration, with many friends and family. „By the way,“ he added, „Rose has never brought up that incident again.“
ONE THAT DIDN'T WORK

Sadly, it may at times happen that forgiveness will not be granted under any circumstances.

Karla spent five years recovering from the devastating heartbreak of an extremely acrimonious divorce in which Bill abruptly left her for his secret lover of six months and then proceeded without success (because Karla had a very good lawyer) to prevent her from receiving a proper division of their assets. Her pain lasted a full five years, but eventually she overcame her distress, met another man, and remarried happily.

Still, even today Karla’s eyes tear when she talks about the events of the past. Very soon after the divorce, Bill’s relationship fell apart and he attempted to reconnect with Karla to be friends. Karla was completely unwilling even to speak to Bill, but over the years, through common friends who liked them both and for the sake of their teenage son, she began to speak to him on the phone occasionally.

She had long ago concluded that their marriage had been very flawed and that terminating it had been good. But she could not forget or forgive the lies that Bill had told and the financial maneuvers she had had to fight.

Through friends, she let it be known that no relationship was possible without an apology. Bill, eager to reestablish the friendship, wrote her a note:

„Dear Karla, I want to apologize for my part in hurting your feelings. I am sorry, Bill“

When Karla received that note, she was furious. Was she supposed to take this hastily written note as an apology? She didn’t even bother to respond. Eventually Bill called her. After some polite preliminaries, he asked:

„Did you get my note?“

„Yes.“

„Well?“

„Well, what?“

„Do you forgive me?“

„For what?“

„What do you mean, for what? I thought you wanted an apology!“

„Oh, I see... well, I guess I don’t forgive you.“

„Why not?“
„You haven’t really apologized.“

„What about my note?“

„Your note was okay as a start. What are you apologizing for?“

„For hurting you.“

„I need an apology for what you did.“

„What do you mean?“

„You lied, you were cruel, you tried to cheat me.“

„I don’t know about that. That’s a matter of opinion“ he said

„Well, what are you apologizing for then? It’s not enough to say that you had a part in hurting me. What part did you have? Unless you can acknowledge what you did to hurt me, I am not really interested in an apology.“

There the conversation ended. Several years later Bill again wanted to make things right. He wrote another note:

„Dear Karla, I thought about what we talked about and I agree that I lied to you, but it was because I thought you would be more upset if you knew the truth, and financially I was afraid that you would rip me off. I am sorry if I hurt your feelings and I apologize. - Bill“

Again Karla was less than satisfied. Bill’s had acknowledged that he had lied but his rationalizations for what he now admitted doing detracted from the apology enough that her heart did not open, and she could see no reason to let Bill back into her life. There seemed to be no acknowledgment of how badly he had hurt her. She wrote him back the following note:

„Bill, I got your letter and I see that you are making an effort to make things right. However, you are spending more words in giving excuses for what you did than in acknowledging what a brutal and painful experience I went through. We both made mistakes that we are paying for. I was not perfect. But if you want us to be friends, I will have to be convinced that you realize how you hurt me, how much of the pain I suffered was caused by your actions. And then you have to feel and communicate some sorrow and even guilt to me. I need to experience that kind of feeling from you, and until then I feel and believe it’s best for me that we keep our distance. - Karla“

There the matter was left. Bill may eventually recognize what he needs to do or he may decide he can’t or won’t, but Karla is taking care of herself emotionally by refusing to grant forgiveness prematurely. If she softened and let Bill off the hook without feeling the healing satisfaction that comes from a heartfelt apology, she will never really open to Bill and their „friendship“ will be a painful sham. The process
of apology and forgiveness is extremely important in an emotionally literate life and is worth pursuing to sometimes excruciating extremes.

As people become skilled in their use, these emotionally literate transactions lose their initial awkwardness. They become part of everyday emotional housekeeping, like raking leaves, walking the dog, or flossing teeth. Once assimilated into everyday life and language these fifteen transactions contribute to a well-ordered existence in which emotions are acknowledged and given their proper place as a source of power and well-being. But the rewards of Emotional Literacy are more than just a tidy emotional house. When our emotions are clear and fully expressed and other people’s feelings matter as much to us as our own, life becomes powerfully moving and at times truly joyous. It is then that the rewards of an emotionally literate existence show their full promise.

SUMMARY

You’ll find that the hardest part of becoming emotionally literate is to own up to the mistakes you’ve made in your relationships.

Yet this is an indispensable process. First, you admit to yourself that you have made a mistake. Then you have to admit your mistake to others. Next, you must feel true regret and convey that to the person you have hurt. Finally, you should agree to make some real, relevant, changes in yourself and you may have to make amends.

We make emotional mistakes when we let ourselves be drawn into one of three roles: Rescuer, Persecutor, or Victim. As a Rescuer, you do things for people that you don’t want to do and that they should do for themselves. As a Persecutor, you become angry and self-righteously attack other people, often people you have Rescued. As a Victim, you either allow yourself to be taken care of by a Rescuer or attacked by a Persecutor, all the while acting as if you can’t do anything about the situation.

If you have acted as a Rescuer, Persecutor, or Victim or have otherwise abused another person, emotional literacy requires that apologize to the people you have hurt or created problems for and resolve to act like a responsible adult in the future. If you have been hurt, you need to learn to ask for apologies and if an apology is forthcoming it is important to learn the proper way to grant, postpone or deny forgiveness.
CHAPTER 8.

EMOTIONAL LITERACY WITH COUPLES AND CHILDREN

Learning emotional literacy requires a group of people, it can't be learned alone. A very good small group is a new couple or friendship. The agreements that are required to make emotional learning possible can more easily be made between two people, especially two like-minded people who have no history of unresolved interpersonal issues with each other.

Finding a partner is difficult enough. Finding a partner who is willing to be completely honest and equal, increases the difficulty. Many people have discovered that the old system of domination/submission, where one person, usually the man, leads, and the other follows, is largely obsolete. Still, people who sincerely believe in equality often fall back into the traditional patterns of inequality. In relationships between men and women, men still tend to dominate, while women find it hard to assert themselves; they need to be vigilant and work continuously to maintain the goals of partnership in which emotional needs are met equally. The same patterns seem to surface in same gender couples as well. There always seems to be a „top” and a „bottom” in each couple.

People are genuinely confused about how to make the modern style of relationships work. In the old patriarchal system the man’s emotional needs took priority while the woman’s priorities were usually not even perceived and if perceived ridiculed as childish, and overlooked. Consequently after a few years of marriage (about seven, on average) many women became unable to take the neglect and rebelled furiously or went mad with frustration. The modern system of equality brings new problems; one major problem is that when dominance/submission is given up it is replaced by competition between the partners. Instead of one person leading and the other following they compete and argue over every point. Cooperation is the basis for an emotionally literate life style but that is difficult to achieve.

It’s no wonder that more and more people are simply giving up and living alone. The answer for those who want to engage in relationships of equality is emotional literacy based on:

• a conviction that both partners have equal rights in the relationship,

• an agreement not to power play each other, and

• a commitment to honesty.
EQUALITY AND HONESTY IN INTIMATE RELATIONSHIPS

My recommendation for those who want an emotionally literate relationship is to quickly establish a cooperative contract based on equality and honesty. In a cooperative relationship:

• neither person tries to manipulate the other with power plays and
• neither does anything he or she doesn’t want to do and they
• both gently and lovingly ask for everything they want while
• listening empathically to what the other needs.

These ground rules will require that you overcome the old established patterns of power playing, rescuing, and lying. These changes are not easy and will not come overnight, but you will find that the energy and optimism released in this process will invigorate any relationship, new or old. When mistakes are made from time to time, apologies and amends keep the relationship on a positive, cooperative course.

Equality

Equality is based on the idea that both people need to have equal rights and should make an equal contribution toward the relationship’s success. Equality doesn’t mean that people can’t differ from each other for a relationship to work. Especially between men and women, who are in many ways different, it simply means that those differences don’t give one person privilege over the other.

Equal contribution does not mean that both partners have to work and earn the same or that expenses and housework are shared fifty-fifty. Equality in an emotionally literate relationship means that both partners make an equal effort contribute what they have to offer in such a way that both feel satisfied. If they become dissatisfied with the other’s contribution they must feel free to say so with the assurance that their partners will work toward a fair compromise.

Honesty

Honesty is the most important agreement in a relationship between equals. No one enters into a serious relationship expecting to be lied to. In fact, it is assumed that two people in love should not lie to each other at all. Many relationships are consecrated in ceremonies in which vows are made: „For richer or for poorer, in sickness or health, to honor, love, and cherish...“ These vows don’t normally include a vow to be completely honest. Small wonder since by that time, in most relationships, at least one of the participants has already lied about something. Sometimes both have.

Even in the most honest of relationships, something a few things have been swept under the rug. Maybe she has always longed for more strokes about her looks, but felt too embarrassed to ask for them. Or perhaps he has not been honest about his dissatisfaction with their lovemaking. Even the smallest lie or secret has a damag-
ing effect on an intimate relationship because it can be the seed for further and bigger dishonesty and in a long-term relationship, the situation becomes even more delicate.

When a long-term couple tries to clean the slate of lies and secrets, there may be dark secrets that could truly upset the other person. Maybe there has been a one-night stand or even a full-blown affair with a third person. Or maybe one partner has recklessly spent money from the joint account without telling the other. Maybe there is some long-term unhappiness or deep dissatisfaction with the other’s looks, intelligence, sense of humor, or sexual style. If that is the case it may be a good idea to reveal these secrets with the help of a third person; a trusted friend, a therapist, or a minister.

Lies of omission, usually about sex, money, or appearance cannot be allowed to remain secret in an emotionally literate relationship. They must be revealed. If a partner with a secret does not reveal it and the other partner finds out, it is my experience that the lie hurts more than the misdeed itself. How long the secret has been kept, how many others know about it, and all the ramifications of the lie are often so devastating that they can permanently damage or wreck the relationship. It is difficult to forgive missteps, but far more difficult to forgive the lies that surround them.

Even people who claim that they would „rather not know“ if their partner has strayed, will likely find the truth extremely humiliating and hurtful. When we condone secrets and say „I’d rather not know,“ we have probably not anticipated how terrible it would feel to unwittingly discover such a secret. That is why lying is so damaging and why it needs to be removed from any emotionally literate relationship.

To summarize

Equality takes two: Keep in mind that an emotionally literate relationship requires both partners to work at it as equals. To do this you must grant each other equal rights and expect equal responsibilities.

Cooperation is the key: Agree with your partner to have a relationship of equality free of power plays, especially lies and Rescues. Make it clear that you want a relationship in which both of you ask for everything you want and don’t do anything that you don’t want to do. Start talking about a cooperative relationship right away. If you are getting involved in a new relationship, begin talking about this notion as soon as you feel that the relationship has long-term potential. This is especially important if you are in love, where everything is seen through a rose-colored mist. Just talking frankly about issues will bring clarity and reality to your budding rapport.
Pre-nuptial emotional agreements

Fran and John are in love. They are lying in the grass, warmed by the spring sunshine on their day off. Both have agreed that they would like to get married. She has been married before with bad results and wants to do better this time.

Fran: „John, can I bring up something that I would like us to talk about before we get married?“

John: „Sure, what is it?“

F: „I have been reading a book about how to have an emotionally literate relationship.“

J: „What kind of a relationship?“

F: „It’s a relationship in which you are emotionally involved and aware. A cooperative relationship where both people agree ahead of time about some things.“

J: „What things?“

F: „Well, this book talks about an honest relationship between equals and I really liked what it says; the idea is that we agree to always say what we want and to make sure that we never get pressured into doing things we don’t want to do.“

J: „I like that. But it seems like we already do it. Don’t you think?“

F: „I know we both want to, but sometimes I think we don’t, actually.“

J: „Like when?“

F: „I think we both lie about what we want and go along with the other person sometimes. Like this morning when we went to the Blue Barn for breakfast. I really wanted to go to the Brick Shack, but I lied because I wanted to please you.“

J: „Lied? Isn’t that what being generous is all about?“

F: „In emotional literacy it’s called Rescuing, and it’s not good because after a while the person who Rescues gets angry. Usually it’s me who goes along with you.“

J: „I know you do and I love that about you; you spoil me. Does that mean you are going to get mad at me later?“

F: „Could be, that’s what happened in my previous marriage, and I really don’t want that again. And maybe there is stuff you are going along with that I don’t know about. Is there?“

J: „Well a couple of things, but I don’t mind...“
F: “Well, I think Steiner is right; it would be better if we were completely honest about that kind of a thing. What are you going along with?”

J: “Why do you want me to look for things to complain about? I love you!“

F: “I just want us to learn to have a cooperative, honest relationship.“

J: “I’ll try.“ He thinks for a moment. „Okay. the truth is I would rather not meet all your girlfriends and hang out with them the way we do...“

F: „Really.“

J: „It’s just not something I’m into. It’s not very interesting. I mean, I want to meet them, but I don’t want to make a special point to spend time with each of them. I don’t have the time to get to know every one of your friends, you know. Also ... I’m sorry, is this too hard on you?“

F: „A little, but it’s okay, let’s go ahead. Thanks for asking.“

J: „Okay, if you’re sure.“ With a concerned look he continues. „I’m really glad you introduced me to your parents. But I’m not that much into family things, like your aunt’s Thanksgiving party. That was a bit much for me, meeting all these people who don’t seem that important to us.“

F: „Okay“ she answers in a subdued voice. „I mean, I’m disappointed and embarrassed now to think that I introduced you to everyone so enthusiastically and you were wishing you were somewhere else.“

J: „It wasn’t that bad, I’d just rather pass.“

F: „Well. I really do like spending time with my family. I have ever since I was a kid. But if you don’t want to come along I’ll just go by myself.“

A thoughtful silence ensues. John begins again. „I’ll tell you what, why don’t you tell me which events are really important to you and I’ll go with you to those. Maybe you can go early and I’ll meet you a little later, so I don’t have to stay as long.“

F: „That sounds fair.“

They hold each other tightly. They both have a bit to think about, but Fran was proud of herself for initiating an emotionally literate dialogue, and John was relieved to have gotten out of some unwanted social obligations.

You may wonder why two happy young lovers should start discussing the small dissatisfactions that seem wholly unimportant compared to the wonderful love they feel for each other. But these are the things that, when the rosy light of new love begins to soften and reality returns, often drive apart couples who once thought nothing could ever come between them. Fran learned this the hard way with her
first marriage. She is right to take the initiative and start a dialogue about ground rules which establish a level of honesty and awareness that later will be very important to avoid another emotional disaster.

_Honesty is the best policy_

Does your partner know enough about you to have an unclouded view of who you are? If not, be brave and fill in the picture. Honesty is frightening, but it pays off when it builds a stronger, more intimate relationship.

If you have information that you are keeping secret, plan to tell your partner as soon as possible. Hoping for a better time to bring it up usually doesn’t work because that better time rarely comes. Instead of waiting, just do it now.

Realize that honesty includes saying what you want, talking about how you feel, and asking for apologies when you can’t let go of a partner’s misdeed.

Sloan and Carol have been married for a couple of years. Theirs is a good relationship that dates back to high school, where they were voted cutest couple by their senior class. In a romantic moment Carol tells Sloan how good it feels to her that they haven’t had sex with anyone but each other.

Sloan swallows hard. It turns out that three years ago, during a six month separation in which they reassessed their relationship, he had a one-night stand with an acquaintance of Carol’s. He did not tell Carol, telling himself that it was not part of their agreement to do so. Now, however, he feels that he must speak up:

„Carol, how do you feel about the idea that if we are going to have a long-term relationship there should be no secrets or lies between us?“

Carol looks alarmed. „Why, have you been lying to me about something?!“

Sloan looks into Carol’s eyes. „No, Carol, I don’t think so, and I don’t want to start now. Let’s sit down. There is something that I never realized until now that I need to tell you. Can I tell you?“

„What is it, for God’s sake!“

Sloan walks Carol over to the couch. Looking in her eyes he asks, „Do you remember the time we were separated back in college?“

„Yes,“ she answers, beginning to realize what he’s about to say.

„Well, I never stopped thinking about you during those months, but I also thought you might decide that you didn’t want to be with me anymore. I was trying to get used to whatever might happen, and I was very depressed. One night, I went on a date with Suzie Green.“
„My old friend Susan?“ she said with a shrill sound invading her voice. She always felt a little insecure beside the beautiful and popular Susan.

„Yeah. I think I should tell you about that date.“

„Oh God, Sloan!“

„I’m sorry. I didn’t think I would have to tell you. But after what you said about never having other lovers I realize now that I have to. Anyway, I want you to know everything about me.“

As he looks at her and sees her expression he gets sacred. Determined to go on he asks, „Can I tell you?“

„Go ahead, tell me,“ she says, crying.

„I spent the night with Suzie.“

She begins to cry more loudly.

„It was nothing to write home about, but it happened.“

Carol looks up at him. Her eyes full of tears she puts her head against Sloan’s shoulder. He tries to pull her into his arms, but she won’t let him.

„Why didn’t you tell me before?“ she pleads.

„Even though we had agreed that we would be free to see other people, I knew it would bother you. I know it would have bothered me. I felt guilty and I told myself that we both probably slept with other people during that time, and I felt then that I didn’t want to hear about your other lovers. I figured you would feel the same.

„I’m so happy to find out that I’m the only man in your life. You’re the only woman I’ve ever loved and that’s the truth, Carol. When you said before that neither of us had ever been with anyone, I felt so bad. I didn’t want to lie to you when you were being so loving with me. I didn’t want to confuse you and I decided that you deserve the whole truth. Now that you know I don’t have to worry about hiding anything ever again.“

Carol was very upset. She said she was not so much upset with the actual deed but with the idea that he had been keeping a secret from her for so long. She felt foolish to think that she had been under a false impression about her husband, the closest person in her life. She feared that this revelation would spoil her love for him. But what hurt Carol more than Sloan’s one-night stand was the loss of trust.

That night, they held each other tighter than ever. It was a night to remember and it went a long way to help Carol get over her hurt feelings. Later, she even felt flattered that Sloan had preferred her over the universally sought-after Suzie. She understood why he had not told her and decided that, though it was hard to accept at
first, she could live with this new information. In the future, when she momentarily found herself wondering if Sloan might be keeping any secrets from her, she was reassured by the thought that if he could tell her about that night, he would probably never lie to her about anything. She felt profoundly safe with him and her fear that this revelation would spoil their relationship did not materialize.

People will vehemently argue that this kind of honesty is unnecessary or worse an act of irresponsible, sadistic cruelty. They may argue further that a person in Sloan’s position, having made a hurtful mistake should bear the burden of legitimate remorse and keep the painful information away from his wife. These arguments ignore some important facts: They ignore the damaging effect of even the smallest lie; how it can proliferate into further and bigger lies and how keeping secrets from a partner undermines the intuitive and empathic process between them. Most important they ignore the far greater pain that people feel when they find out that they have been repeatedly lied to over a long time. Imagine how Carol would feel if after five or six years of occasionally meeting Susan Green socially, she found out, through a casual remark by Susan’s husband that Sloan and Susan had been lovers.

**Housekeeping required**

Do put time aside for emotional housekeeping. Dr David Geisinger (reference) points out that a relationship is only as good as its dialogue. If the dialog is thoughtful, honest and affectionate so will the relationship be. Tell each other about your suspicions, hunches or paranoid fantasies. Listen carefully. Take the opportunity to apologize for hurts. And most of all, find time to give each other strokes.

Don’t take care of emotional business during television commercials or when you are too tired to talk about them: Set aside quality time for conversation. Addressing emotional issues during a walk is a recommendation I frequently make. Another possibility is to have regular dates on which you air emotional issues.

**Review, review, review**

Make sure that you review agreements regularly. In this era of rapid change, agreements that made sense six months ago may no longer make sense.

Talk frequently about issues like money and time, especially where and how each of them should be spent.

Just because you have done things a certain way for a long time doesn’t mean that is acceptable to your partner. This is especially true when it comes to sex, which can become routine and acceptable to one person and not acceptable to the other.

**Be flexible**

Be willing to change your agreements, even after you have negotiated them extensively. Accept change and new points of view. After all, the goal is for both of you to
work together in cooperation and produce feelings of affection and hope rather than resentment and despair.

_A walk in the woods_

Bill and Hillary are both very busy people. They have no children and are work very hard. When they finally get together in the evenings they rush through dinner and barely have enough energy for some chores and a little television in bed. They cuddle while watching TV and usually fall asleep before the set turns itself off.

Without talking about it they seem to have agreed to avoid difficult emotional issues. Hillary has been feeling that she is not getting enough intimate discussion time to process some of the problems they have been sweeping under the rug.

One morning as they are getting ready to go to work, Hillary suggests that they take Saturday morning off, drive to the hiking trail and talk over some subjects. Bill balks at first because he has a golf date, but Hillary insists that he cancel it and he eventually agrees. On Saturday as they start on their hike in the woods Hillary says:

„I’m worried that we are drifting apart. Even though we seem to get along and love each other, I am afraid that things are building up between us that feel bad, to me anyway.“

„Well, I am feeling okay about things,“ Bill says. „Is there something you are unhappy about?“

„See, that could be a problem right there. You don’t seem to notice that we have these little disagreements which usually end up in one of us, mostly me, going along with you in order to avoid trouble. I keep thinking I am too tired or we’ll deal with it tomorrow or that maybe I am being petty but I’m beginning to feel bad...“

Bill interrupted, „I realize we are having these little problems but I thought we were dealing with them as we go. I feel okay about them.“

„Maybe that is the first problem to talk about, because I am not feeling so good. When you say that you think that these problems are being solved ... Can I tell you how I feel?“

Bill nods.

„Actually” Hillary says, „I feel very angry.“

Bill nods again, but he is shaken. Hillary goes on.

„Can I tell you what I am guessing? I suspect that when we disagree you don’t realize that most of the time I am going along with you just to keep a good feeling going.”
Bill, somewhat annoyed, says „I had no idea. I assumed that we are coming to our agreements honestly. This is upsetting, really.”

For the next half hour Hillary recalled a number of incidents where somehow things had gone Bill’s way. Some of the incidents were admittedly very unimportant, like the fact that on a crowded sidewalk Bill always walks ahead, or that he almost always drives when they are together, or that he won’t make suggestions about restaurants when they go out, or that he is often distracted when they speak.

All of this is building some anger in Hillary. He points out that she goes along so he didn’t realize she was upset. In fact, he is annoyed at her for going along with him against her better judgment. She agrees, but says that she is often just too worn out to struggle about these things, and that she would like him to be more aware of these subtle tensions between them. The conversation becomes argumentative and heated. They both realize, Hillary is first to point it out, that they need to cool out. After some minutes they apologize to each other: Hillary for Rescuing him, Bill for subtly power playing her.

They resume their conversation and it seems that the most serious problem was that they didn’t have enough time with each other to make Hillary happy.

Bill was content to sit together and watch TV, sleep together, make love in the mornings or on weekends, and have a few meals out, and for a while Hillary was okay with this too. But she was beginning to dislike the way sex had become more and more business-like. Even though they had agreed that sex in the mornings would be the best time for both of them, she was beginning to resent its clock-like regularity.

„I don’t want to have sex in the mornings anymore;“ she blurted out.

„Well, when then? You say yourself that we are too tired in the evenings, we are both morning people...“

„Well, I guess I want us to take time in the evenings, take a whole evening off after dinner go out for a drink, talk, get reacquainted with each other’s changing lives."

Bill was alarmed by this proposal. He had been happy with their arrangements and he feared that this would take too much time out of their precisely timed lives. He hesitated, and Hillary felt irritated. Their tempers flared and just as they were about to change the subject, Hillary said,

„See, this is the way it always goes. We don’t deal with our disagreements, and if I let this go we would be back where we started. Let’s stay with this please."

They talked for another hour and arrived at some new decisions. Bill realized he hadn’t been making his wife a priority. He was willing to try Hillary’s unsettling proposal. They also agreed to have one of these „housekeeping walks“ once a month.
In the end things did not go exactly as planned but they did take off one evening a week, television-free, to just be with each other and make love. Their walks sometimes only happened every three months. But all in all this discussion had a very beneficial effect. They were flexible in reviewing their agreements and they established a way for their relationship to continue on an emotionally literate basis.

EMOTIONAL LITERACY AND CHILDREN

Emotional literacy can be learned at any point in life but it is best developed in childhood. Daniel Goleman describes a “window of opportunity” during which learning emotional skills is very different from learning them later in life. Reading, for example, is easily learned in our youth. Yet an illiterate adult can have a very difficult time learning to read. The same is true of other skills, such as playing sports, learning foreign languages, music, and, yes, emotional literacy.

It is during this critical learning period in which children learn by the example set by the parents that children establish their various life-long attitudes. They begin to visualize themselves as good or bad, skillful or clumsy, happy or unhappy. They may even think of themselves as fantasy characters. Some children, for instance, will identify with Snow White or one of the Seven Dwarfs. Others will see themselves as Superman or Lois Lane, the Pied Piper or Little Red Riding Hood, even Jesus Christ or the Devil. They will also adopt the emotional habits that fit their view of themselves: grumpy, sweet, imperturbable, impatient, scheming, saintly or wicked. And once children start acting a certain way, they will be seen by others in that way and will get labeled bad or good, happy or unhappy, gentle or violent.

For the most part, children learn their emotional ways from parents and others around them. Once adopted, these habits become patterns or scripts about what life is and what it will be like. These scripts can last a lifetime unless something is done to change them.

• The child that is habitually sad and afraid may become an adult who is depressed and suicidal.
• The child that learns to suppress his tears may become hard-hearted.
• The child that can’t control her tantrums may become prone to addictive behaviors as an adult.

The Wrong Way and the Right Way

As an example of how emotional patterns are established by parents, let’s look at a typical household „minitragedy“ and two ways it might be handled by parents.

First, the emotionally illiterate way:

Matthew, a five-year-old, has just fallen from a chair while trying to sneak some cookies. He is crying loudly. Not only does his knee hurt from where he struck it on...
the floor, but he is humiliated to be caught raiding the cookie jar. He feels angry, guilty, and frightened at the same time. His father reaches the kitchen and realizes what his son has been doing.

„What happened? Did you hurt yourself?“ the father asks angrily. „Stop crying!“

How is Matthew to interpret this? Is he supposed to stop feeling pain? How about his fear and guilt? Is he supposed to keep feeling these things but not cry? Angry and confused, he screams louder. If his father was emotionally literate, he would let well enough alone. Instead, he sees this as an opportunity to teach Matthew a lesson about life.

„Come on Matthew, stop being such a crybaby,“ he says. „You're worse than your sister.“ Now Matthew gets the idea that crying is bad and that girls can cry but boys cannot. He tries to suppress his crying but he can’t. Frustrated, he cries even louder.

Suppose now that his father becomes even more upset and decides to continue his lesson. „Matthew, that’s enough! You know better than this,“ he declares. „You are acting like a sissy. What were you doing on the kitchen counter anyway?“

Matthew has heard about sissies and boys who act like girls from the other kids at school. Now he decides to stop crying at all costs. He clenches his teeth together and quiets down.

„That’s a good boy,“ says his father.

Many parents feel that it is not proper masculine behavior for boys to cry. Boys who are raised not to cry become grown men who are ashamed to cry. When such a man becomes sad enough to cry, he will hide it by lying about how he feels. Eventually, he will become so unaware of his own sadness that he will deny it even to himself. He will deny other feelings of vulnerability too, such as shame or longing. At that point he will only recognize the strongest of his emotions, such as furious anger or mad love.

Girls are treated differently. When they cry it is considered sweet or touching. Almost never are girls made to feel that it is not feminine or ladylike to cry. This may be one reason why women are generally more emotional than men.

**A Better Approach**

Now let’s look at a more emotionally literate response to the cookie incident. When Matthew’s father finds him crying on the floor of the kitchen he picks him up and say: „Boy are you upset! Did you hurt yourself?“

Instead of answering, Matthew lets out a loud scream. He is feeling physical hurt from the fall and guilt from getting caught stealing a cookie. „Sounds like you are mad at me,“ says his father, wiping away his son’s tears. „Yeaaa,“ says Matthew.
„Why? I’m trying to help you here,“ says his father. „Can I kiss your booboo?“ He rocks Matthew until the boy begins to calm down. „Were you trying to get some cookies?“

Matthew begins to cry again.

„Are you feeling guilty? Are you worried I’ll get mad?“ Matthew doesn’t answer but he is quieting down. „Well, you know I don’t like you to eat so many sweets between meals, but I’m sorry you hurt yourself,“ says Father. „Next time don’t try to get any cookies on your own, okay?“

Instead of trying to stop Matthew’s crying, he has helped him understand why he was so upset. He has shown empathy while giving his son the physical strokes of hugs and kisses. After Matthew calms down, his father will have a conversation with him about what happened, how he felt, and how to avoid these melodramas in the future. As Matthew grows up, he will have learned that his feelings are valued and that he can safely express them.

**Emotional Literacy Guidelines for Children**

Children can begin to learn emotional literacy as soon as you show it to them. Eventually you can talk to them about their feelings, usually as soon as they can form a sentence. At about the age of two or three, children begin to feel guilt and are able to empathize with others so they can apologize for the hurt they caused. The same rules of cooperation that apply to adult relationships should be applied to those between children and adults. Equality, honesty, and the avoidance of power plays are just as important with children, though they may need to be customized to fit the situation. That usually means that you should give children as much power as possible and be as open as you can, avoiding lies in every way possible. Here are some guidelines that will teach your child emotional literacy:

**Keep the heart open**

Kiss and hug your children often and tell them that you love them. Like all of us, they crave and enjoy affection. If you show them love through physical strokes when they are young, they will be openhearted as they grow up.

**Don’t power play your children**

Never hit your children. By using power plays to get what you want from children, they will learn to be motivated by fear. If you do power play your children (as we all do at one time or another) make sure to apologize and explain how you felt. Offer not to do that kind of thing again. Then, with the child and perhaps other family members, work out a better method of getting them to mind you.

Example: Three year old Sarah is fond of pushing buttons and turning dials wherever she can find them. Many times she has turned off FAX machines, readjusted the settings on stereos and TVs, redialed phone calls, and lately has been seen...
wanting to turn on the gas stove. Her mother, Jane, is very frightened of a gas leak and has told Sarah „No!“ many times but Sarah seems to be devilishly focused on doing just that. One time Jane surprised Sarah when she was turning a gas knob. Jane lost control. Yelling at her, she gave Sarah a strong whack on her bottom. Sarah was petrified, screaming and crying loudly for a few minutes. After Sarah calmed down the following conversation took place:

„Sarah are you still upset?“ Sarah nods. „Well, I got very angry and I am sorry I hit you. You are not allowed to play with the stove.“

„Yes I am.“

„No, you are not. The stove is hot and it will burn you. If you do it again, you’ll go to time out.“

„No I won’t, mama.“

„Well if you promise to stop pushing and turning buttons I promise not to scare you any more. Do you promise to stop?“

Sarah nods imperceptibly. „Is that a yes?“ Sarah nods again. „Okay if you promise, I won’t yell at you again, and you won’t go to time out. And I am sorry I scared you.“

Sarah starts crying again, and hugs her mother, who hugs her back. „It’s okay, honey, I love you, you are a good girl.“

Be sensitive to what children want, regardless of how silly it might seem. Listen empathically to them. Try to be understanding when they don’t want something because it scares them, embarrasses them, or offends their sense of esthetics or taste. Be flexible when making demands.

Be honest: Being truthful with your children is important, second only to not abusing them with power plays. Explain to them how you feel and what you want from them. Never tell them bald-faced lies and keep your lies of omission to a minimum, making sure to be truthful as soon as possible. If you want them to be truthful, you must first be truthful with them. After all, children sense when secrets are kept from them and will learn to keep secrets from you.

If you have been honest with your children you should assume that they will be truthful with you. Given how commonplace lying is, however, you should look out for lies from children as vigilantly as you eventually will have to look out for drug use. Sooner or later your child will tell a major lie and I believe that to be an extremely important opportunity to practice what you have learned here.

Another example: Sally, 13, has just come home from school and has gone to her room. She is staying in there longer than usual. Checking, you find her in her room reading.
„Hi Sally. Back from school?“ She looks up and seems to be covering what she is reading with a book.

„What are you reading?“

„Nothing.“

„It looks like a magazine.“

„I said, nothing.“

By now, you can tell something is fishy. You remind yourself to stay calm, in your Adult.

„It is a magazine, isn’t it?“

„Yeah, Mom.“ She says morosely, rolling her eyes.

„Whose is it?“

„Kathy’s, she lent it to me.“

By now Sally looks scared. Meanwhile you have gone over to her and picked up the magazine.

„This seems brand new to me. Where did you get it?“

„I told you!“

You sit down next to her, look at her averted eyes, and as kindly as possible, speaking from the heart you say: „Sally are you telling me the truth? Please don’t lie to me. You know how I feel about lying. However you got this is not as important to me as you telling the truth. Just tell me and we’ll work it out.“

„I bought it.“

„Oh good, I was afraid that maybe you stole it. I know some kids think it’s cool to steal from 7-Eleven.“

„Mother, I wouldn’t steal. You know that!“

„Good. So how did you get the money to buy it? Tell the truth.“

Sally is clearly upset. She looks down. She clams up. You wait. After a minute of silence she says: „I took the money from your wallet.“

„Sally, did you really?“

„Yes."

Claude Steiner: Emotional Literacy; Intelligence with a Heart
Silence again. You search your feelings. You are scared by what Sally has done and you are sad that she lied to you. You are angry because she has been rebellious lately. You want to tell her that taking money from you is just as bad as stealing from 7-Eleven.

Time for an action/feeling statement.

„Sally, can I tell you how I feel about this?“

Sally shrugs and then nods. Keeping a loving tone, from the heart you say:

„When you take money from my wallet to buy a magazine, and then try to lie about it to me, it makes me feel scared and very sad and also angry. Can you understand that?“

She is listening and agrees. You now have an opportunity to find out why she feels she had to steal to buy a trashy magazine. She tells you that you would not buy it for her or let her use her allowance. She tells you the magazine has interesting stories in it. You pick one up and look at the table of contents. Definitely junk.

„Well, Sally, I definitely don’t like it, but on the other hand I realize that I can’t stop you from being interested in it. But you are not allowed to take money from my wallet and I would like you to apologize for that. More important, I want you to agree not to lie to me. Your lying is what scares me and makes me sad. Because if you start lying we won’t be able to talk the way we are used to. And that would be too bad, don’t you think?“

Sally agrees.

Make truthfulness between you and your child the most important bond between you.

Let go of control: Give your children power by letting them take charge in games. Wrestle with them, let them hit you lightly in play, pretend to cry or get sad. This kind of behavior shows them that you are not always in control. By the same token, tell them about your feelings. If they want to know why you feel the way you do, explain it to them in short and simple sentences.

Understand your children’s demons: Be aware of your children’s fears and accept them. Learn to recognize when they are afraid and why. Spiders, snakes, dogs, the dark, the boogie man, whatever frightens them is real to them and needs to be taken seriously. Talk about their fears, validate them, and help avoid them. On the other hand if you are out of control with your own emotions, shield them from this experience, since it can frighten them badly.

Encourage emotionally literate media: Read emotionally literate books to your children. Take them to emotionally literate films and plays. Avoid stories containing a lot of violence and cruelty, unless they make a clear moral statement about
anger and how to deal with it in a good way. The same is true of love and sex: Make sure the message is emotionally literate. Read them The Warm Fuzzy Tale 37, about „warm fuzzies“ and „cold pricklies.”

Teach emotional self-defense: Teach children how to defend their boundaries and reject behavior they don’t want by saying, „I don’t like that,“ or „Please stop it,“ or „Leave me alone.“ These are all acceptable and effective ways of deflecting unwanted behavior. Role play such situations and teach them how to respond to different scenarios.

Be patient: Educating children takes time, but once they’ve learned, the lesson will stick. Repeat your lessons over and over in a consistent manner and be sure to live what you preach. Remember: An apple doesn’t fall far from the tree.
Chapter 9.

EMOTIONAL LITERACY IN THE WORKPLACE

So far I have shown how I teach emotional literacy in controlled situations in which mutual agreements of cooperation and honesty can be made; training groups, couples and their children. But in the real world we have to make do without the safety of such agreements. The work place is such a situation. There is no guarantee that your work mates have even the slightest interest in emotional literacy. Introducing emotional literacy in the workplace is an experimental undertaking and worthy of a whole book. I can only hope to give some basic hints here.

Again, emotional literacy is best learned when we have an agreement with people to conduct a cooperative relationship that is free of power plays and where rescues and lies are consciously avoided. Work environments are usually just the opposite. It is in the workplace that we are most likely to find power plays and wholesale lying and keeping of secrets. In fact, most work settings actually encourage emotionally illiterate behavior. It is not uncommon to hear about managers who threaten workers with losing their jobs if they step out of line, or to hear about workers who are sexually harassed. Even though workers may have the law on their side, the law has no teeth without a union or an expensive lawyer to back it up and most workers have little recourse but to submit.

Secrets about salaries, promotions and firings are routine. But most workplace power plays are not so overt. Subtle power plays abound, not just from bosses and management but among workers. Pecking orders develop and with them come subtle insults, secrets, gossip, lies, and hurtful humor. Even though most people realize what is going on, there is no agreement to stop these actions or to prevent them. Consequently, the workplace can be a minefield of emotionally illiterate, toxic transactions.

How can a person create an emotionally literate workplace? It isn’t easy. Even in work environments that pride themselves of easygoing friendliness, a great deal of deeply entrenched emotionally illiterate behavior can be taking place.

Basically, you are proposing to replace an emotionally illiterate culture with a different one, in which power plays are not used and emotions are considered worthy of attention and respect. You can start the process of change by finding at least one person inside the organization who has the same interest in emotional literacy as you do. Then find others. You can build interest by showing this book to people or by posting a copy of the Emotional Literacy Commandments, which can be found at the end of this chapter.

Everything I have tried to teach in this book can be tried in the workplace, though it may be more difficult. Emotional literacy at work is more risky because it has to
be practiced without a cooperative contract to protect you from power plays. Be prepared for people to refuse to cooperate, or even have a hostile reaction.

For instance, Mark, a coworker on your team, regularly makes supposedly funny comments about your colorful ties and clothes. You suspect that he feels competitive with you because you have some advanced computer skills that he lacks. In any case, you want to tell him that the way he keeps kidding you makes you angry, but you have no idea of how to approach this touchy subject.

You wind up feeling depressed and hopeless about working with him. You realize that you have contributed to the problem by going along with the joke so far, maybe you are being oversensitive by now but you would like him to stop. All the basic rules apply: you should first obtain permission from him to talk about your irritation. But in this case, because people are not used to being asked, and if asked may agree without thinking, you must be extra careful to have „informed consent“ from him instead of just agreement.

„Hey, Mark, when you have a minute I’d like to pick a bone with you. Is that okay?“

Mark: (perplexed) „Yeh, sure.“

„Well it’s sort of a complaint, are you sure you want to hear it?“

Mark: (looking genuinely alarmed) „What did I do wrong?“

„It’s not that bad, but I want to make sure that you want to hear.“

Mark: „Well okay. How about now?“

„Now? Later might be better, when we have a little time.“

„How about after work?“ „That’s good. Don’t worry about it, it’s just something that has been troubling me. But I’m sure we’ll work it out just fine ... Let’s meet at the Hut.“

You can see that what would take one transaction in a contractual, cooperative relationship can take several minutes of conversation in the real world. And of course it may not work out as neatly as I suggest. But that does not mean that it can’t be done. In all probability, given a skillful, open-hearted approach, Mark will be primed and ready to hear your feedback and you’ll be able to establish an understanding so that he will stop kidding you about your clothes.

Next, you can give strokes, ask for strokes, accept and reject strokes just as I have explained, but again every one of these transactions will require more preparation, be more complicated and lengthy, and have more risk of backfiring.

You can deliver action/feeling statements and intuitive hunches and you can hope that you will get an emotionally literate response. If not you can try to extract a better response but that may be more difficult. For instance, you might feel that you
have worked long and hard on a project for your boss and haven’t gotten enough praise for it. You are feeling bad about yourself and you need strokes. Instead of just asking for permission and then simply asking for some strokes from your boss you have to approach the matter much more diplomatically.

„Helen, do you have a minute? I would like to ask you something.“

„I’m busy now.“ Helen is not a woman of many words. You sense that she likes you, but this will not be easy.

„How about later?“ you ask.

„Okay,“ she says without looking up from her work. Not unfriendly, just busy.

„What’s a convenient time for you?“

„I’ll call you in your office as soon as I’m done here. About a half an hour.“

Great. Now comes the hard part.

Helen calls you in your office. „You wanted to talk?“

You are scared, your mouth is dry and at this point it feels safer to drop the matter, but you are determined and you press on, „Yes, can I come over to your office?“

„You don’t want to speak on the phone?“

„I would rather speak face to face if you don’t mind.“ There is a split second of silence.

Helen is getting the idea that this conversation is special. „Okay, come right over.“

Seconds later when you get to Helen’s office she looks up from her desk and beckons you in. She is clearly curious. She signals you to sit down. „So what do you have on your mind?“

„Helen, I am a bit nervous doing this, but I wanted to ask you a question. May I?“

„Sure, go ahead.“

„You know that we just finished a very large project and that I worked long and hard hours on it.“

„Yes“

„Well, I am not clear on whether you liked the job I did.“

„I thought I told you that I appreciated how hard you worked on it, didn’t I?“
„Yes, you did but you know I don’t get any feeling that you appreciated anything but how hard I worked. I mean working hard is no guarantee of quality. Did you find the work I did particularly good?“

„Yes of course, that goes without saying.“

„If you don’t mind, if there is something specific you can say about it I would really appreciate hearing it. I am feeling underappreciated these days, not particularly by you, but in general. Would you mind?“

„Actually I thought the work was quite exceptional, really.“

„I hate to press you on this, but could you say how so?“

„It was very creative and also very precise. I thought you knew that.“

„I guess I do, but it’s good to hear it from you. Thanks for indulging me. I hope this wasn’t a bother for you ...“

„Not at all, I am sorry that you have been feeling under-appreciated. I am very glad that you are working for me.“

Of course this is a very positive scenario. Helen could have chided you for fishing for strokes or being childish. Or she could have refused to elaborate on her praise. In an emotionally illiterate environment that would not be too unusual. If this had happened you would have had to discreetly excuse yourself and leave the matter there, or use the information to improve your work. But most people even in emotionally illiterate situations want to be good to others, and the likely outcome in most of these situations will be positive.

PRACTICE WHAT YOU PREACH

If you are in a position to supervise people then you will be in a better position to put some of these principles into practice. Discreetly ask permission whenever you bring up emotionally loaded material. You can give strokes and ask for strokes. You can gladly accept strokes you want and politely reject strokes you don’t want. You can even give yourself strokes. Practice telling people how their actions make you feel and get them to hear you without being defensive. Listen to their feelings. State your intuitive hunches and attempt to extract validation for them. If you do this in an open-hearted and flexible manner most people will be receptive, since you are in a position to protect them from power plays. As the boss, however, you will be responsible to make sure that you are not forcing these ideas on powerless and unwilling people who have to go along with you.

As an example, let’s assume that you are a line supervisor in a factory with twenty five workers under you. You enjoy being friendly with your workers and you like to be treated in a friendly way. One of your best workers seems to be unhappy at work. She does not greet you in her usual friendly fashion and she seems withdrawn from
other workers. Your intuition tells you that there is something wrong and you decide to investigate in an emotionally literate fashion. You approach Paula on her break.

„How are you today, Paula?“

„Fine.“

„May I ask you a question?“

She nods. You must make sure that Paula is genuinely willing. „Are you sure? I don’t want to intrude.“ The tone of your voice will have everything to do with her feeling that she has a choice. You must really mean that she is free to decline your question.

Let’s say you gain her permission.

„Well, I have noticed that you seem quiet. I have a hunch that something is upsetting you.“

„Oh no, everything is okay,“ she says unconvincingly. Normally, in a cooperative situation, it would be perfectly permissible to insist on more of an answer. But in this instance, if you insist you could be abusing your power; she may not want to tell you what’s wrong or talk to you at all.

„Well, I’m glad. Can I tell you how I feel?“

Again, she nods.

„When you are so quiet I get worried that something is wrong. And I would be sad if there is something I could help with, and you didn’t ask.“

She looks at you dubiously.

„Do you believe me?“

She nods again.

„Okay, well please keep in mind that I am here to be helpful if I can. Let me know if there is anything you want me to do.“

With that you best leave the situation alone. You may feel sad or even angered by Paula’s unwillingness to talk to you. You may be mistaken that there is anything wrong. In any case you have laid a foundation for future emotionally literate conversations with Paula. If you behave in this manner reliably you will acquire a good reputation with your workers and hopefully with your superiors. You may actually be able to demonstrate that this approach improves morale and productivity with your workers and even succeed in having other supervisors try it.
For a person in a position of power, apologizing is a good way of demonstrating that you really mean to be emotionally literate. You will obviously make mistakes, and in the traditional workplace these mistakes are usually not acknowledged. It will be truly impressive to your workers if you seem cognizant of your errors, admit them, and apologize and make amends to those you may have affected badly with them.

START AN EMOTIONAL LITERACY STUDY AND SUPPORT GROUP

Notice who in your workplace is able to accept and even enjoy the steps of this program and stroke them for it. They are the ones who will most likely be interested in joining a support group. The ideal size of such a support group is eight to twelve people. With a group this size you can begin to institute real change. For example, a lunchtime group of this size would have a noticeable presence in most organizations and would certainly grow. You could even organize a training weekend. Possibly, the group could convince your boss to finance a weekend retreat by showing him how it would improve the mood and productivity of the workplace.

At work as well as in the world at large you will have to be creative if you want to use these ideas. Try little experiments and observe the results. Remember that the basic ideas of emotional literacy, which I have tried to encompass in the ten commandments below, are:

✦ Equality is the premise
✦ Love is the energy
✦ Honesty is the method

Why should these efforts create a positive result at all? Because people, whether they believe in emotional literacy training or not want love and have a desire for good strokes and a need to safely be able to express how they feel. If the are provided with the opportunity to give and receive what emotional literacy provides, they will be happier and more productive. And if you develop a set off good techniques and learn to apply them, after five years maybe you will be able to write a definitive book about emotional literacy in the workplace.
THE TEN COMMANDMENTS OF EMOTIONAL LITERACY

I. Place love at the center of your emotional life. Heart-centered emotional intelligence empowers everyone it touches.

II. Emotional Literacy requires that you not lie by omission or commission. Except where your safety or the safety of others is concerned, do not lie.

III. Stand up for how you feel and what you want. If you don’t, it is not likely that anyone else will.

IV. Emotional Literacy requires that you do not power play others. Gently but firmly ask instead for what you want until you are satisfied.

V. Do not allow yourself to be power played. Gently but firmly refuse to do anything you are not willing to do of your own free will.

VI. Respect the ideas, feelings and wishes of others as much as you do your own. Respecting ideas does not mean that you have to submit to them.

VII. Apologize and make amends for your mistakes. Nothing will grow you faster.

VIII. Do not accept false apologies. They are worth less than no apologies at all.

IX. Love yourself, others and truth in equal parts. Never sacrifice one to the other.

X. Follow these commandments according to your best judgment. After all, they are not written in stone.
Book Three:

The Emotional Warrior
CHAPTER 10.

THE EMOTIONAL WARRIOR

In this book I have shown you a series of powerful techniques to increase your heart centered emotional intelligence. These techniques will help you improve your relationships in all areas of your life. They will also increase your level of personal power.

Some people have been so impressed by the results of emotional literacy training that they want to involve their friends, family, and lovers with these ideas. Some of them even believe that these ideas should become part of a moral code. Over the years I have met a number of people who have seen emotional literacy training as a tool for social change and want to apply it beyond their own personal lives. These people belong in a worldwide team of activists that I call „Emotional Warriors.“

THE ANCIENT REGIME

Throughout history people in power have used any and all methods available to dominate people and stay in control. These methods can be physical or psychological, but intimidating threats of violence are always in the background to back them up. In this system of domination, people are placed on a pyramid of power, one-up to some and one-down to others with every level controlling the level below.

This system of domination is part of the basic structure of our society known as patriarchy. In classic patriarchy, a father heads a clan or tribe, and his authority is passed down through the male line. In today’s patriarchies, the father figure passes power down according to his whim--usually to one or more of his male followers, but sometimes, also, to carefully selected women.

The system is kept in place by domination, whether in government, the workplace, or in families. All this domination is exercised through person-to-person transactions or power plays. The sergeant who reports a soldier for having a missing button, the boss who expects a greeting from his secretary but who doesn’t himself bother to respond to the greeting, the husband who demands but does not provide sexual satisfaction the father who smiles dismissively whenever his young daughter wants to be heard--these are all dominating power transactions.

UNDERSTANDING CONTROL POWER

We hardly notice how domination works, because we are immersed in it from birth. The value of transactional analysis as a tool to understand relationships can be clearly seen here. With transactional analysis you can observe power relations, ana-
lyze them and once you understand them, figure out how to avoid them in yourself and others.

After spending our childhood at the mercy of other people’s whims, we accept as natural that we should be either victimizers or victims, one up to some or one down to others, leader or follower, dominator or dominated. The slapped child becomes the parent who slaps, the child who is dominated and controlled becomes the parent who dominates and controls. We accept abuse and control power as the way of the world.

If we want to fight unreasonable control and power abuse effectively, we need to fully understand how power plays work. The chart on the opposite page shows you four ways in which control power is used:

There are two main forms of control power: physical and psychological. Each can be expressed either subtly or crudely. There are four types of power plays:

A power play is a transaction in which one person tries to force another person to do something against his or her will.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CRUDE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I. Crude Physical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>murder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rape</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>imprisonment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>torture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beating</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shoving</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>banging doors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II. Crude Psychological</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>insults</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>menacing tones</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interrupting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sulking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ignoring</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blatant lying</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interrupting</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PHYSICAL</th>
<th>PSYCHOLOGICAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>touching</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>looming</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>space invasion</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leading by the arm</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>making someone stand / sit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>patting on the head</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>false logic</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sarcastic humor</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>discounting</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>„attitude“</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lies of omission</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>advertising</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>propaganda</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUBTLE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>III. Subtle Physical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV. Subtle Psychological</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Power Plays
I. Crude physical power plays are obvious to the naked eye and include hitting, shoving, throwing things, banging doors, or worse, kidnapping, torture, rape and murder.

II. Subtle physical power plays are not as easily visible, although if you are a victim of them you may become aware that you are being power-played after a while. Still, you may have no idea how power plays work or how to stop them. Subtle physical power plays include such things as towering over people or standing close to them so that you invade their personal space, leading them by the elbow or hand or walking ahead of them, making people stand or sit or blocking their path.

These power plays are often used by men on women, who accept them as a matter of normal male behavior.

Psychological power plays work because people are trained to obey from early childhood. Without using physical force I can intimidate you with threats or with the tone of my voice. I can push you to action by making you feel guilty. I can seduce you with a smile or a promise, or persuade you that what I want is the right thing to do. I can trick you, con you, or sell you a preposterous lie. If I can overcome your resistance without using physical force, I have used a psychological power play.

Psychological power plays are all around us in daily life. Some are crude, some are subtle.

III. Crude psychological power plays include menacing tones and looks, insults, bald-faced lies, and blatant sulking. Also: interrupting, ignoring, making faces, rolling your eyes, tapping your fingers, and humming while others talk.

IV. Subtle psychological power plays include clever lies, lies of omission, subtle sulking, sarcastic humor, gossip, false logic, ignoring what people say, and at a mass level, advertising and propaganda. In every case a power play is a transaction designed to cause or prevent an action in another person.

Examples of physical power abuse are more shocking than those of psychological abuse, and they are less widespread. Even in the most violent environments, such as prisons or battlefields, people do not suffer primarily from direct physical oppression. Instead, their minds are controlled by the threat of violence. In our society this is especially true in homes where women and children are physically abused and battered.

AVENUES TO POWER

There are two widely different ways of becoming powerful in this world: power plays and power literacy. The first requires being a person with no feeling for others and therefore no limits to his grasping needs. Chronic power players feels little empathy for another person; such people need to be cold to their victims’ pain and will do whatever is necessary to keep control.
**Power Literacy.** I have been speaking and teaching about an important source of personal power in this book, the power of emotional literacy. To become an emotional warrior, however, you need ‟power literacy“ in addition to emotional literacy. In other words, you need to understand how power operates, how it is accumulated, how to take power, how to share it, and, at times, how to give it up.

The problem is that in a domination-based system such as ours, power is often inaccurately defined as ‟the capacity to control other people.“ Unfortunately, most thinking about power runs along these lines. Power theorists ignore other important forms of power, such as the power of communication, knowledge, or love.

To be passionate, centered, or spiritually aware is to be powerful. Take for example, Nelson Mandela, who completely changed the political direction of South Africa from his prison cell and eventually became president of that nation. And what historical figure was more powerful than Jesus of Nazareth? He was a poor carpenter who changed the world with his message of love deserved by all.

Knowledge is another example of power that rivals control. That is why authoritarian governments have always done what they could to prevent people from being educated or from gathering freely to learn from each other.

One reason the totalitarian, Soviet block governments of Eastern Europe collapsed in the 1980’s was that improved communications across their borders destroyed their ability to control the flow of information and neutralized their propaganda; an example of how control is ultimately an impotent approach to power and a validation of the saying: „the pen is mightier than the sword.”

Many people renounce power because they see it used only for dominance or control. They think that to be powerful, you can’t love people and be truly concerned about their fate. Because of this, rejecting power is seen as a good and necessary thing. But equating powerlessness with virtue is a form of power illiteracy. In fact, personal power, no different from power in the physical sense is simply the capacity to bring about change; to make things happen. People should strive to be as powerful as they can be, without taking power away from others.

**THE MANY FACES OF PERSONAL POWER**

Personal power goes far beyond being able to manipulate or control people. You have power when you can bring about what you seek and prevent what you don’t want. On the other hand you are powerless when you can’t bring about what you want; or can’t stop things you wish to avoid. The enormously powerful and wealthy president of a global corporation who manipulates politicians and workers may be powerless to get the love of his wife and children. All his control power is useless to get him a happy personal life; he can’t even get a sweet caress or loving glance from the ones he loves.
Most of us don’t have the kinds of problems associated with wealth and control. Ordinary people are powerless when they can’t control what they eat, drink or put in their bodies, when they can’t sleep or stay awake, when they can’t think clearly or control their emotions. We are especially powerless, and feel this keenly, when we can’t curb other people’s controlling and oppressive behavior. If you are able to cope with these problems, your life will likely develop satisfactorily. If you can’t muster the energy and skills to overcome them, your life will be joyless and filled with turmoil and depression, psychosis, and addiction.

OUR INNER ENEMY; THE CRITICAL PARENT

One important reason why we become powerless is that we have an internal foe that constantly weakens us from within.

When people are systematically abused, most of them will, in time, abuse other people and themselves. In this way, they become their own and each other’s abusers, prison guards, and torturers. Examples abound in which oppressed people turned on each other and treated each other as viciously as their oppressors did. An example of this happened in Nazi concentration camps where Jewish inmate „capos,” appointed by the wardens to guard their fellow Jews, adopted their captors’ cruel ways.

This process also works when people are subjected to subtle psychological abuse. Such abuse is hidden and unacknowledged and tends to be forgotten. But it is taken in and eventually becomes the internalized. I use the label Critical Parent for that internalized self-abuse which keeps people in line and punishes them for every thought or act that breaks its oppressive rules. When children, introverts, women, people of color, workers, lesbians, gay men, disabled and physically handicapped people, and old, poor, or „ugly“ folk are mistreated, they can feel so powerless that they come to accept the mistreatment and believe that it is deserved.

Eventually, the powerless abuse themselves, physically and psychologically, as they follow the dictates of the Critical Parent in scores of self-destructive, self-loathing ways. In this way they have absorbed society’s patriarchal scheme, which says it is all right for some people to dominate and for others to be beaten down. In this scheme those who are beaten down are somehow „wrong;“ It labels the poor as „lazy,“ or women as „irrational,“ or minorities as intellectually and morally inferior.

In this book I have explained how the Critical Parent operates. Self-persecution is the work of the Critical Parent, called variously the „harsh superego,“ the „Pig Parent,“ „the Destructive Critic,“ ”catastrophic ideation,” „stinking thinking,“ „low self-esteem,“ the „Enemy,“ and so on depending on the theory or system of thought that recognizes its destructive influence. Whatever it is called, it is a voice or an image in the mind saying that the person is bad, stupid, ugly, crazy or doomed-in short, not okay. What’s more, that attribution is passed down the generations from parents to children reverberating dreadfully through the minds of whole populations.
In emotional literacy training we have vowed to remove the Critical Parent from our lives, a hard but worthwhile task. But fighting our own Critical Parent is not enough. In fact it is a hopeless task unless we also resist the controlling patriarchal power all around us.

No one needs to fight this battle alone. People everywhere are struggling to run their own lives and are eager to join in the struggle for self-determination. To succeed we need to develop a new form of personal non-abusive power known as charisma.

SEVEN SOURCES OF POWER

Let me describe seven sources of non-abusive power. Students of Eastern religions will recognize their source in the ancient theory of the chakras of Kundalini yoga: Earth, Sex, Power, Heart, Throat, Third Eye, and Cosmos.38

I have renamed these seven power sources Balance, Passion, Control, Love, Communication, Information, and Transcendence.

No one of these powers should be valued over another. Instead, they should be used together, for each has its own unique capacity to bring about change. When you use them in combination, you will find that this rainbow of options is much more powerful than the blunt, often brutal forms of control power that dominate so many of us.

BALANCE; Balance or grounding, as it is also called, is the capacity to be rooted and comfortable while standing, climbing, walking, or running.

When you have a well-developed capacity for balance, you „know where you stand“ and you are able to „stand your ground.” Because you know where you stand, you will not be easily pushed out of your physical or personal position. Your body will be firmly planted, and your mind will be steady.

Balance is a particularly valuable power source for women. Patriarchy discourages women from attaining a strong sense of physical balance. Women’s fashions designed to please men--tight clothes, miniskirts, high heels--interfere with physical stability. So do the requirements of modesty--limited and careful motion--for women of „breeding.“

Men, on the other hand, are free to be as physically comfortable as they desire, wear roomy clothing and shoes, and have minimal requirements for grooming and modesty.

In the Western World, as women move slowly toward equal status with men, they are casting aside many of the dictates of dress and grooming that have been required for them. As a result, they are feeling more powerful--more rooted, grounded, and balanced.
As with all the other power sources, you should try to reach a "happy medium" in regard to Balance. If you are deficient in Balance, you will be too obedient, easily frightened, and timid. But if you overdevelop Balance, you will be stubborn, stony, dense, unmoving, and dull and you will no be able to tolerate or handle being thrown off equilibrium.

2. PASSION: The power of passion can invigorate like nothing else can. Passion can create or destroy. Passion brings opposites together, forces confrontation and change.

In the absence of sexual passion, there would be no Romeo and Juliet, few marriages, no unrequited love. But passion is not only sexual. It also fuels missionary zeal, quixotic quests, revolution.

If your passion is underdeveloped, you will be tepid, boring, and gutless. If your passion is excessive it can get out of control and become destructive.

3. CONTROL: Control has been badly used but it is an essential form of power. Control allows you to manipulate your environment and the objects, machines, animals, and people in it.

Control, which can be both physical and psychological, also gives you power over yourself. Control is especially important when, in the form of self-discipline, it lets you regulate your other powers, such as passion, information, communication, and, very importantly, your emotions. This control is vital when events around you run amok and threaten your survival. Emotional Literacy is partially a matter of controlling emotions; expressing them or holding them back for a powerful personal approach.

If you lack in control power, you can be victimized by your inner turmoil and become addicted, depressed, sleepless, and slothful. Or you may be victimized by the outer world, becoming unemployed, homeless, battered, persecuted, mentally ill, or sickened by pollution. You will be seen as lacking discipline, unable to control what you feel, say, and do, and what you put in your mouth, up your nose, or into your veins. On the opposite end of the spectrum when obsessed by control you become preoccupied with absolute control of every situation and soul.

4. LOVE: Everyone wants to love and to be loved, knowing how good it feels when it happens. But few people look beyond love's obvious pleasures to see its power. Fewer yet fully develop that power.

Love is more than just Valentine’s Day cards, the thrill that you get when you see or touch your beloved, or the warm hug of a mother’s child. Love has the power to bind people together, enabling them to work tirelessly side by side on the hardest tasks, instilling hope that can propel them out of the most hellish situations; floods, famines, wars, plane wrecks.
If your power of love is underdeveloped, you will be cold, lacking in warmth or empathy for other people, unable to nurture or to be nurtured, unable even to love yourself. If this power is overdeveloped, you will be a habitual Rescuer, driven to excessive sacrifices for others while neglecting yourself.

A loving attitude guides the Emotional Warrior. This attitude applies to three elementary realms: Love of self, love of others, and love of truth. These three qualities provide the vision necessary for a heart-centered approach to living:

1. Bedrock individuality; love of self. When we love ourselves we will stand our ground in defense of our personal uniqueness. Individuality keeps us firmly focused on what we want and makes us capable of deciding what will contribute or detract from our personal path. Only a passionate love of self will give one the strength to persevere in our decisions when everyone loses faith in who we are or what we are doing.

2. Steadfast loyalty; love of others. By being loyal we are aware of our involvement in the lives of other human beings and as passionate about others as we are about ourselves. Love of self without love of others is selfishness. Love of others without love of self turns us into Rescuers ready to give everything away. Love of self and others can only be sustained by keeping in touch with our own true feelings on one hand and the feelings of others on the other hand.

3. Conscious truthfulness; love of truth. Love of self and others is intimately dependent on the love of truth. Truthfulness is especially important in the information age, where we can be „well informed,“ and at the same time under the influence of false and deceitful information. Love of truth is the attribute that keeps a person actively involved in pursuing valid information, that is information that reflects the realities of the world. „Radical truth telling,“ explored in the „Notes for Philosophers“ at the end of this book is the application of the love of truth to relationships.

5. COMMUNICATION: The power of communication depends on the capacity to reproduce one’s thoughts and feelings in others. But communication will not work without the willing ear of its recipient. Two operations are involved: sending and receiving, speaking and listening. Two-way communication is needed to transmit knowledge, to solve problems with others, to build satisfying relationships--in short, to achieve Emotional Literacy.

If you are lacking in communication power, you will be unable to learn or teach much. If you stress communication too much, you could become a compulsive, careless talker, paying too little attention to what you are saying or its effect on others.

All the sources of power work with each other. A very powerful combination of powers, used by great teachers is made of communication, information, and love. Their communication is inspired by the love of truth and the love of people. They do not browbeat or use control to persuade. Instead they explain, and try to understand why if they are not understood; their students are free to compare what they are
learning with what they already know, thus forming their own well grounded opinions.

6. INFORMATION: The power of information is that it reduces your uncertainty so you can make effective decisions. When you have information, you can anticipate events and you can make things happen or prevent them from happening.

If you are lacking in the power of information, you suffer from ignorance. If this power is overdeveloped, you tend to rely excessively on science and technology, becoming hyperintellectual and lacking heart.

Information comes in four forms: science, intuition, history and vision. Science gathers facts methodically, by taking a careful look at things and noting how they work. Science is like a camera taking focused and sharp pictures of reality. It is a powerful source of certainty.

Intuition grasps the flow of things. It produces „educated guesses“ about the way things are. Intuition is fuzzy, not exact like science, but it is a powerful guide toward what is probably true. Because of this, intuition is often vital in the early stages of important scientific discoveries.

Historical knowledge comes from knowledge of past events, either through personal experience or through the study of history. Historical perspective can be a powerful tool to help you forecast events.

Vision is the ability to see what lies ahead directly, through dreams and visions. We all have visions of the future but it takes great self-confidence to be a visionary. Vision when recognized is a highly valued form of information.

Ordinarily, our society considers science the only valid source of knowledge; history is for old people, intuition for women, and vision for lunatics. Still, each of these forms of information has validity and when effectively used can add to your charisma.

Information has been badly misused over the ages. It has been used in the service of control, to wage war, to seize land, and to impose political and religious views. Today, in the Information Age, the misuse of information comes in the form of disinformation, false advertising, negative political ads and other forms of modern propaganda. They are used to manipulate millions of people through television and other mass media and to persuade people to live certain life styles and buy the products that go with them.

Information in the service of love would be starkly different. It would be freely available and used to build people’s power; their health through medical and psychological knowledge, their wisdom through education, their relationships through emotional literacy.
7. TRANSCENDENCE: When viewed as a source of power, Transcendence is the power of equanimity, of letting events take their course without getting upset or letting your ego get involved. It lets you find calm and see things as they are, in the midst, even, of earthshaking events. You find transcendence by realizing how insignificant you are in the universe—how brief life is before you return to cosmic dust, how ephemeral your successes and failures, how relatively unimportant your pains and joys. Whatever your situation may be, you can deal with it when you see it as a speck in the immensity of time and space. With this understanding, there is no fear of the future or even death because one’s existence cannot be disrupted by ordinary events. The power of transcendence gives one hope and faith that there is a meaning to life even if one’s limited intelligence can’t grasp it. With it we can “rise above” a particular situation and trust and feel our power in spite of material conditions.

If your capacity for transcendence is underdeveloped, you will see yourself at the very center of things and cling desperately to your beliefs and desires, aversions and cravings, successes and failures, no matter the cost. You will fail to see the effect that you have on other human beings and the environment, because all that matters to you, is you. On the other hand if transcendence becomes an overused method of coping, you will become detached from earthly matters, so that you will “float away” oblivious of events around you, unwilling and unable to touch the ground.

My knowledge about these sources of power varies; I understand some (control, communication) better than others (transcendence, vision). I invite you, dear reader, to add what you know about these subjects by communicating with me by mail or through the web page given at the end of this book.

A SHIFT FOR THE MILLENNIUM

At its worst, Western culture today is an engine of absolute control. The six other sources of power are have been diminished and put at the service of control’s purpose:

Transcendence has been distorted into patriarchal religions worshiping wrathful gods and headed by corrupt religious leaders whose self aggrandizing aim is the accumulation of money and/or power.

Information is becoming an increasingly expensive commodity developed by science to serve war technology, and to manufacture and sell goods. Valid information is becoming indistinguishable from disinformation, propaganda and infotainment.

Communication has become a one-way process to manipulate people through the media.

Love has been reduced to a parody of itself, laden with jealousy and obsession, heralded in popular songs and films but ignored in real life.
Passion has been reduced to lust and violence portrayed in the media. The passionate love of truth, fairness and equality have become unpopular concerns of an increasingly distressed minority.

Balance, as people become increasingly inactive and overweight, has become the realm of athletic super-heroes.

Our lives don’t have to be limited in this way. As pioneered by Riane Eisler in *The Chalice and the Blade* we can shift away from patriarchy and control in the direction of partnership and love. Together, as Emotional Warriors, we can use our love-centered powers to make these changes happen.

You can enlist in this effort by developing your individual powers and charisma in its many forms. You need:

- Balance to stand your ground.
- Passion to energize you.
- Control to keep a steady course.
- Communication to effectively interact with others.
- Information to make accurate predictions.
- Transcendence to keep perspective.
- Love to harmonize and give all these capacities a powerful forward thrust.

Emotional literacy training speaks directly to the heart, calling for people everywhere to practice three interconnected virtues: love of self, love of others, and love of truth. This is the path of the Emotional Warrior.

**SUMMARY**

You don’t have to go along with a world where human power is expressed through power plays or violence. You can link up with others to struggle for a world in which power is expressed through love; of yourself, others and truth. You can do this by becoming emotionally literate and teaching emotional literacy techniques to others. To be passionate, balanced, and spiritually aware is to be powerful. There are seven non-violent sources of power you can draw on: Balance, Passion, Control, Love, Communication, Information, and Transcendence.

Leading with your heart and informed by emotional literacy you can develop your own personal charisma while looking out for others. If you do you will become an Emotional Warrior.
CHAPTER 11.  

ONE LAST WORD  

Love is a word often used in this book, a word generally overused, easily abused and yet ... love, I think most would agree, makes the world go 'round. What love is, exactly, is not clear, but certainly it goes beyond the well known passion between lovers or the adoration of our offspring. It is the deep instinct that makes us enjoy being with each other, taking care of one another and doing things together. When we allow it to express itself it helps us survive and prosper.

Of the many things I have said in this book, I want to reemphasize one: Love is at the very center of emotional literacy. Any emotional intelligence that we may accumulate apart from the loving emotion is like a paint-by-the-numbers canvas that may look good to the casual gaze but is not the real thing. If you begin by giving and taking strokes you will open up your heart and access the only lasting basis for an emotionally literate life.

Very likely you will wonder how the practice of a few transactional exercises could possibly produce such a powerful source of energy and power. Isn’t that claim of simple-minded alchemy to turn psychological lead into gold? But I am not promising to create a loving heart. What I am assuring you is that these transactions, practiced honestly with another willing and sympathetic person, will unleash your heart’s power. Giving and receiving strokes will force open the gates that imprison your heart. The rest is up to that irresistible power of nature: Love. It may not seem so to some, but Love is ready to surge forth and do battle with our dark side, if we will let it and if we can find ways to make it safe, and if we nurture it as it grows.

Eventually, whether or not you develop your Emotional Literacy will depend on a number of factors: Your desire, whether you can find people to practice with, the opportunities afforded you in this cruel world and how successful you are in avoiding its dark side. In these last words I want to make sure, dear reader, that you understand that this book’s message has everything to do with Love--of yourself, of others, and of truth.

Claude Steiner  

Berkeley, California  
August 2002
NOTES FOR PHILOSOPHERS

With these notes I am following the example set by Eric Berne. In his writings, he provided his readers with the historical and philosophical background for his views. These notes are the result of interviews with Jude Hall about the philosophical controversies surrounding the issues raised in this book.

Love as a Fundamental Good

The idea of love as a basic good, to be universally pursued with all other human beings, is a markedly Christian notion. It was first espoused in the West by Jesus Christ and in China by Mo Di, a contemporary of Confucius’ disciple Mencius. The most influential critic of Christianity’s concept of love is Friedrich Nietzsche. He held that the universal love espoused by Christians is disingenuous, hypocritical, neurotic, and leads to depressive nihilism (what he called passive nihilism) and to the degeneracy of society and the arts. He maintained that the universal love and altruism to which Christians aspire necessitates an egalitarian leveling which prevents society from producing excellence by assigning privilege evenly among an people, when it should go to the especially gifted. These special individuals should be allowed to secure the power they need to achieve their vision.

Nietzsche’s idols were Napoleon, Julius Caesar, Augustus Caesar, and early Roman emperors, strong men after the fashion of his human ideal, the superman. While this may sound bizarre to the average reader, Nietzsche (who died in 1900) is considered one of the most influential figures in twentieth century thought, and his critique of the hidden psychological roots of altruism is accepted by thinkers as diverse as Max Horkheimer, Theodore Adorno, and Michael Foucault. Some aspects of Nietzschean thought have even influenced as egalitarian a thinker as Herbert Marcuse. Thus, as deviant as Nietzsche’s ideas may seem to the uninitiated, they cannot be dismissed. Students of contemporary politics may recognize the traces of the Nietzschean point of view in the theories of conservative politicians today. The belief that social services and government subsidies to help the disadvantaged are undesirable is the permissible manifestation of a far more extreme elitist conviction which permeates the corridors of conservatism throughout the world.

Paradoxically, though the views of this book originate in the teachings about brotherly love of Jesus of Nazareth, they are likely to be classified as secular humanism, anathema to fundamentalist Christians and despised by conservatives.

Lying and Honesty

The idea that lying is a universal evil was recorded in one of the ten commandments brought down from Mt. Sinai by Moses; „Thou shalt not bear false witness.“ Though it is a fundamental Judeo-Christian dictum, there is very little attention paid to just what, precisely, obeying the rule would imply. When speaking of truth in this book I am applying the well-known criteria followed in the courts, namely that in order not to lie one needs to tell „the whole truth (no lies of omission) and
nothing but the truth (no lies of commission.)" According to this definition, a lie is a conscious act, so that a person cannot lie without being aware of it. The truth here is simply the truth as the speaker knows it--subjective truth--and different from and only vaguely related to the abstract and unattainable concept of „the truth.“ (See notes on The Truth, below.) St. Augustine was the foremost proponent of absolute truthfulness. He believed that „God forbids all lies.“ The notion that one should never lie was taken to its political extreme by Immanuel Kant, who argued that it would be a moral crime to lie to a murderer about the whereabouts of a potential victim. Benjamin Constant’ countered that „no one has the right to a truth that injures others.“

In this book, while arguing that being truthful is a requirement of emotional literacy, I recognize that the imperative of truth-telling is secondary to the imperative of safety. Thus any person aspiring to be radically truthful has to keep in mind that truth-telling can, on occasion, be harmful and needs to be evaluated according to circumstances. This may seem to open the door for all manner of lies to preserve people’s safety. But there are, in everyday life, very few situations that warrant lying on the basis of safety and certainly no justification whatsoever for the constant dishonesty accepted as normal. Most of the lies people tell have nothing to do with protecting others or oneself from harm, and everything to do with manipulating people to one’s advantage, often under the guise of attempting to shield each other from „needless“ pain.

According to Dr. Bella de Paulo „everyday lies are part of the fabric of social life,“ and in a study of people lying she found that people lie in one fifth of their social interactions and that seventy percent of those who lie would tell the lies again. Sixty percent of the lies were outright deceptions, a tenth of the lies were exaggerations and the rest were subtle lies, often lies of omission.

In her book, Lying, Sissela Bok, the acknowledged expert on the issue, classifies all manner of lies and secrets and acknowledges the harm that chronic lying causes us. Yet she does not go as far as to recommend that people should not lie at all, mostly, it seems, because of her apprehension that radical honesty can lend itself to sadistic misuse.

In his book Radical Honesty, Brad Blanton,’ after asserting that „we all lie like hell. It wears us out. It is the major source of all human stress. Lying kills people,“ also falls short of recommending that we not lie at all. He fails to endorse a radical policy of truth telling (in spite of the title of his book) because part of our chronic lying, as he sees it, are lies we tell ourselves, something not so easily defined and even less easily stopped. I avoid the self-lying conundrum by defining a lie as a conscious act in which we are aware of saying something we believe to be false. Given this definition, lying to ourselves is impossible.
The Truth

By writing about the truth and love of truth, I am letting myself in for a huge philosophical debate which has frozen greater and infinitely more meticulous minds than mine in their tracks. The idea that truth is something to be discovered with the mind rather than accepted from religion was first recorded in the 4th century BC. It was a result of a new interest in the workings of the physical universe.

Socrates and Plato extended their exploration of truth into the realms of ethics, aesthetics, politics and psychology. (Aristotle shifted the emphasis back to empirical inquiry, in defiance of his teacher Plato, who favored speculation and logic with little empirical grounding.) It was the Greek sophists, Plato’s contemporaries and intellectual antagonists, who first began to argue that emotion and prejudice are as important as reason in the pursuit of truth. Plato argued for absolute truth, discoverable through a dialogic process which he called dialectic; the sophists believed that opinion, or “doxa,” is truth and that truth is wholly relative. Hence Protagoras’ famous dictum “Man is the measure of all things.” The dominance of religious truth returned with the Middle Ages, but in the Enlightenment the debate resumed. The Rationalists echoed Plato in arguing that reason is the best guide to truth; the Empiricists, like Aristotle, preferred to rely on the physical facts; the Romantics inadvertently came to parallel the sophists by asserting the importance of emotion and the irrational. (It should be noted that while the sophists were often disingenuous hustlers, the Romantics were earnest seekers rebelling against the excesses of rationalism and industrialization.)

Though Nietzsche was the inheritor of the Romantic tradition from his early idol, Schopenhauer, he was one of the least dewy-eyed thinkers who ever lived. He argued that language (and even thought) are inherently deceptive and that no society can survive without mutually agreed upon falsehoods, “. . . to be truthful means to employ the usual metaphors. Thus, to express it morally, this is the duty to lie according to a fixed convention, to lie with the herd and in a manner binding upon everyone.” Today, those familiar with the work of Nietzsche’s inheritors, the structuralist and posstructuralist philosophers, such as Derrida and Foucault, may sneer at the notion that the concept of truth has any meaning or that it can be discovered.

To my mind, there is nothing that can be called „the truth.” The truth changes with time. There are several sometimes seemingly contradictory truths and there is no way to contain the hugely complex facts of nature in any one set of words. But I believe that some statements are truer than others. This book does not propose to have a monopoly on universal moral truths. Instead, it offers a paradigm which, within our culture, has the potential to make our lives happier and richer. What I can say with certainty is that to reap the benefits of practicing emotional literacy, one must take „love of truth” seriously and seriously strive to be truthful. Love of truth implies, as George Sand is believed to have said: „We must accept truth even if it changes our point of view.” Being truthful is speaking truth as we understand it. We need to be particularly vigilant within the context of loving, cooperative rela-
tionships, where lies often seem necessary to prevent harm, but so often create much more harm than they avert.

*Violence and the Dark Side*

Most people have, deep in their hearts, a real need and desire to bond, to be open, loving, and respectful of other’s feelings. One of the first tenets of Transactional Analysis is that everyone is born Okay. This idea probably filtered down to Eric Berne from the 19th century philosopher Jean Jacques Rousseau, who maintained that people are born good and it is social ills that make them bad. Philosopher Herbert Marcuse and, initially, Sigmund Freud have called this original goodness the „inborn social instinct“ Eros, and the energy that drives it „libido.“ Freud originally believed that our ability to live harmoniously and lovingly with each other comes from this „Eros principle,“ while violence and exploitation come from the „ego principle,“ the side of human nature that is concerned with self-preservation and therefore strives to become as powerful (and therefore safe) as possible and is willing to harm others to achieve its ends.

There are others, like Francis Fukuyama, who have suggested that this Rousseauian conviction that people are intrinsically good while all negativity comes from bad social conditions is a naive, liberal notion. Freud himself in the later part of his life, after witnessing the horrors of WWII, decided that there was, in addition to libido, the life principle, another innate human tendency, an inborn antisocial instinct which he called Thanatos, the Death instinct.

In addition to the positive, cooperative side of people there is a dark side of human nature that we have to reckon with. Beyond the simple lessons of this book we will be confronted with hard situations and, as emotional warriors, we should not be taken by surprise if our efforts are met with hard if not nasty resistance.

The pursuit of emotional literacy presupposes that people are born with an innate tendency toward goodness, cooperation, and love; that is, a tendency to exercise ethical power. Without that tendency we would be fighting a constant, exhausting, uphill battle. But we all have forces within that are profoundly unethical, which are not just implanted by a bad culture but are probably innate. These forces involve aggression, greed and unethical manifestations of sexuality. They stem from primitive, irrepressible and even vital and valuable survival instincts.

The moral philosophers of the Enlightenment generally defined evil as error. In the terms of this book, error is equivalent to emotional illiteracy, or a lack of a sense of enlightened self-interest that would make it evident to us that our evil deeds will eventually hurt us by leaving us isolated from the tribe. But the root of evil may not be just error but the result of deep, instinctive, unchecked survival impulses.

To be an effective emotional warrior you must be able to admit your own aggression, selfishness and greed, your own inborn urge to survive at all costs. You must also be aware of and accept these impulses in others. An Emotional Warrior knows
that we all have selfish and aggressive instincts, and managing those instincts in an ethical way is one of the primary aims of emotional wisdom.

Fyodor Dostoyevsky acknowledged this irreducible selfishness in human nature when he wrote:

„To love another as oneself according to Christ’s commandment is impossible. Only Christ was able to do this, but Christ is a perpetual and eternal ideal towards which man strives ...”

There is a dark side, not only to human nature, but also to the human condition. All human beings live every day with the possibility of loss, tragedy, and even disaster.

In the modern world we have protected ourselves with technology from many types of tragedy. However, we may have paved the way for a greater collective tragedy—a worldwide catastrophe, for that same technology, if left unchecked, may destroy the biosphere.

The awareness of tragedy is relevant to the pursuit of Emotional Literacy, especially for the emotional warrior. Some survivors of tragedy feel that they no longer have the resources to worry about the rights and needs of others. They may fall into a nihilistic „After all I’ve been through, I deserve to be happy, by any means necessary“ or „I’ve suffered, why shouldn’t others suffer too?“ attitude. An emotional warrior must understand this temptation to succumb to the dark side of our nature in response to tragedy, and must be able to resist this temptation. She must understand that she may not be rewarded materially for her efforts, she may even suffer tragedy in spite of her valor; sometimes, tragically, virtue is not only its own reward, but along with knowledge and meaning its only reward. A warrior must be prepared for that possibility.

An Emotional Warrior is aware of the dark side, both the dark side of human nature (innate greed and aggression) and the dark side of the human condition (tragedy) and strives to practice honorable ethical power even when one or both of these twin facets of the Dark Side threaten to wreak havoc.

**Violence and Abuse**

The connection between childhood abuse and violent adult behavior, mediated by emotional numbing, is a strongly established one.

The relationship is not perfect. For instance, there are certain neurological determinants of violent behavior which are strongly associated with trauma to the brain. That is to say, youngsters who experience head injuries, whether accidental or due to abuse, exhibit a certain lack of inhibitory capacity which can result in and is correlated with uncontrolled violent behavior. On the other hand, childhood abuse is also highly correlated with violent adult behavior. In fact, abuse is more strongly correlated with adult violence than brain injury. This underscores the urgent need to stop domestic violence.
The most dangerous mixture of violence determinants is the combination of both abuse and neurological damage.

Using time spent in jail as a rough measure of violent behavior, the results in 95 male juveniles are startling:

- No neurological determinants, no abuse: No jail time
- Neurological determinants, no abuse: 360 days jail time
- No neurological determinants and abuse: 562 days jail time
- Neurological determinants and abuse: 1,214 days jail time

Children with brain injuries almost always incur them from neglect or abuse. Child abuse, especially child abuse that involves blows to the head, is a serious determinant of violent adult behavior. And the trauma of neglect and abuse causes the kind of emotional numbing that makes one capable of abusing or neglecting a child. Intervention and emotional literacy training are desperately needed. By teaching empathy, emotional literacy training stops the vicious cycle of abuse and neglect.

**The Critical Parent**

Critical thinkers will question the concept of the Critical Parent. Some argue that it is too much like a *homunculus*, a little person inside of our heads. The Critical Parent is just one way to visualize and make accessible a method for decathecting—taking away psychic energy from—a set of recurrent, debilitating prejudiced and deprecatory thoughts. These self-abusive, self-limiting thoughts are not based on the facts of current reality. They are leftovers from our childhood which distract, de-motivate, and demoralize us. The fact that some people hear these as derogatory, insulting, or doom ridden „voices in the head“ (what we know as the Critical Parent) makes the process of decathecting and disconnecting from them easier. It is easier because you can speak to, disagree with and evict a voice in your head, whereas it is more difficult to respond to and resist a doom ridden image or amorphous feelings of inadequacy.

This discussion leads to questions of the validity of the concept of ego states. Are there really three and only three completely distinct states of the ego which manifest themselves in sequence and which operate in three distinctly different ways? Again, the value of these concepts is that they help us to better understand human social behavior. They are metaphors useful for representing human beings in their social transactions. When transactional analysts draw two people with their three ego states on the chalkboard, we know that these are not true representations of these people any more than a street map is a true representation of a city. They are, however, highly useful approximations of human behavior and structure, as useful as a street map for getting around in the human situation.
APPENDIX A.

EMOTIONAL AWARENESS QUESTIONNAIRE

Although there is no scientifically valid emotional intelligence or literacy test, the questionnaire below can give you a good idea of your level of emotional awareness, which is an essential part of emotional literacy.

Please answer these questions as honestly as possible. The point is not to look good, but to find out for yourself where you stand in terms of emotional awareness. If you can’t decide whether your answer is Yes or No, answer Not Sure.

1A. I have noticed that sometimes when I find myself with a person who is very emotional I am surprisingly calm and without feeling.

   Yes - No - Not Sure

1B. At times when I am about to interact with people I don’t know well, I feel sensations like heart palpitations, stomach cramps, a lump or dryness in the throat, or a shortness of breath, but I don’t know why this is happening.

   Yes - No - Not Sure

1C. Sometimes I am flooded by emotions that disorganize and confuse me.

   Yes - No - Not Sure

1D. From time to time, I am aware of having feelings of anger, from slight irritation to rage.

   Yes - No - Not Sure

1E. If another person is emotional, I am usually able to tell what emotion they feel, such as fear, happiness, sadness, hope, or anger.

   Yes - No - Not Sure

1F. I enjoy situations in which people are having strong positive emotions of love, hope, and joy, like at weddings or in church services.

   Yes - No - Not Sure

2A. Sometimes after a difficult time with another person, I feel as if parts of my body are numb.

   Yes - No - Not Sure
2B. I take one or more over-the-counter drugs to deal with headaches, stomach and digestive symptoms, or body pains that my doctor can’t explain.

   Yes - No - Not Sure

2C. I know I have very strong feelings, but I am frequently unable to talk about them with other people.

   Yes - No - Not Sure

2D. I am aware of having feelings of fear, from apprehension to terror.

   Yes - No - Not Sure

2E. Sometimes I can feel other people’s feelings in my body.

   Yes - No - Not Sure

2F. I am appreciated by other people because I know how to cool down emotional situations.

   Yes - No - Not Sure

3A I can easily kill a small animal like a snake or chicken without feeling anything in particular.

   Yes - No - Not Sure

3B. I am often jumpy and irritable, and I can’t help it.

   Yes - No - Not Sure

3C. I find myself lying about my feelings because I am embarrassed to speak about them.

   Yes - No - Not Sure

3D. I am aware of having strong feelings of love and joy.

   Yes - No - Not Sure

3E. I often do things for other people because I sympathize with them and can’t say „no“ to people.

   Yes - No - Not Sure

3F. I am good at helping people sort out their emotions because I usually understand why they are feeling them.
Yes - No - Not Sure

4A. I can be around people who are suffering physical pain without getting upset about it.

Yes - No - Not Sure

4B. I get sweaty palms around people I don’t know.

Yes - No - Not Sure

4C. I know I have strong feelings, but most of the time I don’t know what those feelings are.

Yes - No - Not Sure

4D. I am pretty good at knowing what I feel and why.

Yes - No - Not Sure

4E. Sometimes other people’s feelings are very clear to me, and that can be a problem.

Yes - No - Not Sure

4F. I can usually handle people who have strong feelings and unload them on me.

Yes - No - Not Sure

5A. I am almost always a rational person and have no problems with my emotions.

Yes - No - Not Sure

5B. I have been in love and suddenly, inexplicably lost that feeling completely.

Yes - No - Not Sure

5C. I am overwhelmed by bad mood sometimes.

Yes - No - Not Sure

5D. When I have to make an important decision, I usually know how I feel about it, whether it be scared, excited, angry, or some other combination of emotions.

Yes - No - Not Sure

5E. In a competitive situation in which I am winning or clearly superior, I feel bad for the other person.
5F. When I am in a room full of people, I can tell how the group is feeling—excited, angry, bored, or scared.

Yes - No - Not Sure

6A. I very, very rarely cry.

Yes - No - Not Sure

6B. Sometimes when I watch a TV commercial, tears come to my eyes, and I don’t really understand why.

Yes - No - Not Sure

6C. Sometimes when I am feeling bad, I can’t tell if I am scared or angry.

Yes - No - Not Sure

6D. I am a person who at times feels shame and guilt.

Yes - No - Not Sure

6E. I have had the opportunity to shoot an animal like a bird, rabbit, or deer, and was not able to do it because I felt bad for the animal.

Yes - No - Not Sure

6F. I often change the way I act toward another person because I figure it will make things easier between us.

Yes - No - Not Sure

Now that you have answered all the questions, you can score the questionnaire. Count up the number of „Yes“ responses on all questions marked A. Write that number (from 1 to 6) in the space marked „A“ below. Repeat that process with B, C, D, E, and F questions.

A. __  B. __  C. __  D. __  E. __  F. __

There now should be a number (from 1 to 6) next to each letter above. Later you will be able to use these numbers to create a bar chart and determine your emotional awareness profile.
YOUR EMOTIONAL AWARENESS PROFILE

Let’s get back to the bar chart that you generated with the questionnaire about yourself. First of all, I want to reemphasize that this profile is not a measurement of your emotional literacy but an examination of awareness, which is only an aspect (though a very important one) of emotional literacy.

Create a blank bar chart similar to the ones below on a separate piece of paper and fill in the boxes based on your scores. For example, if you answered “Yes” to six D questions, fill in the D column all the way up through the number 6 row. If you answered “Yes” to two B questions, fill in the B column through the number 2 row. Shade your remaining scores. When you have finished, you will have a bar chart similar to the example below based on the emotional awareness scale.

The A questions examine emotional numbness (EN); B questions test for physical symptoms (PS); C questions refer to chaotic primal experience (CE); D questions test for differentiation (DF); E questions for empathy (EM); and F for interactivity (IA). The profile you generated will help you see what kind of work you need to do to improve your Emotional Literacy. The three most common profiles are:

Low awareness profile:

<p>| | | | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

XX XXX XXX XXX XXX

EN PS CE DF EM IA
(A) (B) (C) (D) (E) (F)

If your profile looks like this you are a person who hasn’t paid much attention to your feelings and tends to be puzzled by the feelings of others. Most of the time you are not aware of feeling any emotions at all; they’re not part of your normal life as far as you can tell. On the occasions that you have a strong emotional response, you feel anger or fear and you do everything you can to overcome that unwelcome state. You will profit from working on your emotional literacy.

High awareness profile:

<p>| | | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>XX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>XX XX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>XX XX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>XX XX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

XX XXX

EN PS CE DF EM IA
(A) (B) (C) (D) (E) (F)

If your profile looks like this you are a person who has paid much attention to your feelings and tend to be puzzled by the feelings of others. You are aware of your feelings at all times and accept them as part of your normal life. On the occasions that you have a strong emotional response, you feel anger or fear and you do everything you can to overcome that unwelcome state. You will profit from working on your emotional literacy.
If your profile looks like this, your emotions are part of your everyday life awareness. You know how you feel, why, and how strongly most of the time. You feel comfortable talking about emotional subjects and understand other people’s emotions, but you may find that your awareness is a problem. If you talk about your emotions you may create problems for yourself, and if you don’t you may feel like a stranger in a strange land where no one sees what you see. You are in a very good position to develop a high level of emotional literacy.

The average awareness profile:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>EN</th>
<th>PS</th>
<th>CE</th>
<th>DF</th>
<th>EM</th>
<th>IA</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>XX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>XX</td>
<td>XX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>XX</td>
<td>XX</td>
<td>XX</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>XX</td>
<td>XX</td>
<td>XX</td>
<td>XX</td>
<td>XX</td>
<td>XX</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If your profile looks like this, you are aware of your feelings but don’t always know what to do about them. You understand some of your emotions but are puzzled by others. You are able to empathize at times but at times you are left cold by other people’s feelings. Most of the time, when in an emotional state your feelings are a bothersome, chaotic jumble which to try to get away from by ignoring them. When you try to talk about them to other people the results are mixed. Sometimes feelings are resolved, sometimes they are made worse. You are the person most likely to profit from this book.
APPENDIX B.

EMOTIONAL LITERACY WORKSHEETS

For use in emotional literacy training

These forms can be obtained
in MS Word format
from

www.claudesteiner.com
CONTRACTS

Contracts are made to protect the participants from the fearsome possibilities of emotional work: being coerced into opening up, being judged, attacked, ridiculed or deceived, being made responsible for other people’s actions, being gossiped about or shunned from the group. Safety facilitates honest and free communication essential for emotional literacy.

Confidentiality Contract

✦ When discussing the events of the meeting outside of the meeting the person will take responsibility to make sure that the identities of the people discussed cannot be recognized.
✦ Anyone can impose a partial or total ban on being discussed outside of the meeting by just requesting it.

Cooperative Contract

A cooperative contract is a mutual agreement to abstain from power plays

A power play is any maneuver designed to get another person to do (or stop from doing) something that she/he would not do of his/her free will. Power plays range from the gross, physical to the subtle, psychological.

Two types of subtle, psychological power plays are especially important in human relationships and should be especially avoided:

Lies: Bold-face lies or lies by omission; including lies about what we want or don’t want for ourselves and lies about how we feel.

Rescues: A Rescue occurs when a person either:
does something he/she does not want to do or he/she does more than her/his fair share in a situation.

Instead we will ask for what we want, while not doing what we don’t want to do, and negotiate to a mutually satisfying, cooperative consensus.

Asking Permission

We agree to precede every emotional communication with a request for permission to proceed. This gives the person addressed the choice to engage or decline a potentially difficult transaction.
ABOUT STROKES

Strokes are units of interpersonal recognition.

1. Strokes are essential for emotional and physical survival and health.

2. Strokes Can be Good or Bad; Positive or Negative:
   - Good, positive strokes (AKA: Warm Fuzzies) are wholly positive, heartfelt and truthful recognition transactions.
   - Bad, negative strokes (AKA*: Cold Pricklies) are toxic recognition transactions.
     1.) Overt put downs
     2.) Covert put downs .
        a. Comparisons.
        b. Insincere strokes (AKA: Plastic Fuzzies.)

   * AKA: Also Known As

3.) Strokes Can be Wanted or Unwanted:

A person may not necessarily want a stroke even though it may be positive in nature.

4. Strokes Can be Physical, Verbal or Non-verbal (Action Strokes):
   - Physical strokes can be simple touch, hugs, kisses, caresses, back rubs, being held, holding hands.
   - Verbal strokes can be about a person’s clothing, intelligence, generosity, creativity, elegance, wisdom, dignity, leadership ability, tact, warmth, energy, taste, honesty, looks or any attribute a person possesses.
   - Action strokes are non-verbal forms of recognition like listening empathizing, or visibly liking or loving someone

5. Strokes Have Power:

They have the power to soothe or agitate, to create good or bad feelings, to make people feel OK or Not OK about themselves, to heal or cause physical and mental illness. Some strokes are more powerful than others depending on how much they are wanted who is giving them and how strongly they are worded or delivered. Stroke starvation can lead to physical and mental and emotional illness. Depression is most often the result of stroke deficit. Stroke satisfaction „opens the heart.“

Claude Steiner: Emotional Literacy; Intelligence with a Heart

183 / 192
### THE CRITICAL PARENT

**Q.: People need positive strokes. So why don’t people exchange them freely?**  
**A.: Because of the Stroke Economy rules enforced by the Critical Parent**

The Critical Parent: (AKA (Also known as) the Pig Parent, Enemy, internalized oppressor, prison guard, harsh superego, low self esteem, electrode, negative self talk, cognitive traps, catastrophic expectations, stinking thinking, etc.)

The Critical Parent is a coherent, learned set of critical and controlling points of view which are often, but not always, heard as an internal, parental voice.

The basic message of the Critical Parent is:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>YOU ARE NOT OK</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Specifically:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You are <strong>bad</strong> (sinful, lazy, wicked, etc.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You are <strong>ugly</strong> (ugly face, ugly body, etc.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You are <strong>crazy</strong> (mentally, emotionally, irrational, out of control, etc.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You are <strong>stupid</strong> (retarded, can’t think straight, confused, etc.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You are <strong>doomed</strong> (ill, hopeless, self destructive, etc.)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

YOU WILL NOT BE LOVED and  
YOU WILL BE EXCLUDED FROM THE TRIBE.

The Critical Parent’s role in relation to strokes is to enforce the rules of the Stroke Economy. The Stroke Economy is a set of rules that regulates the exchange of human affection.
THE STROKE ECONOMY

The Stroke Economy is a set of rules that regulates the exchange of human affection.

The Stroke Economy’s Rules of the Critical Parent are:

**Don’t give strokes**: If you have a stroke you want to give don’t give it.

**Don’t ask for strokes**: If there is a stroke you want don’t ask for it.

**Don’t accept strokes**: Don’t accept a stroke you want.

**Don’t reject strokes**: Don’t reject a stroke you don’t want.

**Don’t give yourself strokes**.

When most people follow some or all of these rules, the eventual outcome is that there will be a steady and dramatic decrease in the strokes exchanged between people.

Any stroke is better than no strokes at all. People who are stroke starved become willing or even eager to accept negative, toxic strokes. People get used to surviving on a reduced diet of strokes, often negative strokes. The result is that we don’t enjoy our loving feelings and, as predicted by the Critical Parent, we can’t love and we are not loved by others.
OPENING THE HEART

Opening the Heart is an Exercise for the free exchange of strokes. We begin Emotional Literacy Training by Opening the Heart because the heart is the gateway to our emotions and it is here that we can begin to explore feelings in relative safety.

Dismantling the Stroke Economy by:

A. Giving Strokes:

Overcoming Critical Parent prohibitions against giving strokes (Strokes must be truthful, not manufactured or exaggerated. Poetry is allowed, however.)

B. Asking for Strokes:

Overcoming Critical Parent prohibitions against asking for strokes. (When asking for strokes, depending on the risk we want to take, we can ask for a specific verbal or physical stroke from a specific person or for any kind of a stroke from any person.)

C. Accepting/Rejecting Strokes

Overcoming Critical Parent prohibitions against taking strokes we want

Overcoming Critical Parent prohibitions against rejecting strokes we don’t want

Errors we commit:

• Rejecting positive strokes we want
• Accepting toxic strokes (negative strokes disguised as positive strokes, or “plastic fuzzies.”)
• Accepting positive strokes we don’t want.

D. Giving Oneself Strokes

Overcoming Critical Parent prohibitions against giving oneself strokes.

The practice of this exercise has the effect of increasing the exchange of positive strokes, resulting in an expansion of positive feelings: Opening the Heart, between participants.
SURVEYING THE EMOTIONAL LANDSCAPE

PART 1

Surveying the Emotional Landscape is an exercise about emotional awareness, emotional honesty and empathy and about people’s emotional interconnections.

Part I: an exercise that teaches to effectively show others how their actions affect our feelings and that shows how to accept that sort of information without defensiveness

1. Making an Action/Feeling Statement

The A/F transaction is a reciprocal exchange of information about how one person’s action has affected another person’s feelings.

When delivering an A/F statement we simply inform another person, as follows:

„When you (action) I felt (feeling.)“

When speaking of an action it is important to characterize it in strict descriptive, behavioral terms; what the person did. No judgments, accusations or theories.

When describing a feeling it is important to specify the feeling (angry, happy, hurt, etc.) and its intensity (furious, annoyed, irritated, etc.) Again, no judgments, accusations or theories.

2. When accepting an A/F statement we acknowledge that a certain action of ours caused a certain feeling in another person.

„I understand; when I (action,) you felt (feeling.)“

No defensiveness or attempts to explain or justify our actions.

With the action/feeling transaction we learn about the feelings we cause in people, the feelings they cause in us, and their intensity. We also learn to control our need to argue and be defensive when confronted with the consequences of our actions.
SURVEYING THE EMOTIONAL LANDSCAPE

PART 2

Part 2 of Surveying the Emotional Landscape, Validating Intuition, is an exercise in which we develop our intuitive skills and learn to be emotionally honest.

Validating Intuition, Empathic Perception or Paranoid Fantasy.

Intuition is a powerful tool for the acquisition of knowledge. Intuition can express itself as a hunch, an empathic perception or a paranoid fantasy. Intuitive knowledge, to be properly used must be checked out. Validating intuition is a reciprocal exchange of information about the accuracy of our intuitive perceptions.

1. When attempting to validate an intuition we ask the following kind of a question:

   „I have a hunch about how you are feeling. Can I tell you about it?
   After permission is given:
   „I have the hunch that you are feeling (explain)“ or
   „I have a paranoid fantasy that (explain)“

2. When responding to an intuitive perception we endeavor to validate (instead of discounting) how much of it is correct, even if just a „grain of truth.“

With this transactional exchange we learn to become aware of our intuitive perceptions, to word them and to respectfully question others about their validity. When faced with another person’s perceptions we learn to honestly validate, instead of discounting their accuracy.
TAKING RESPONSIBILITY

Taking Responsibility concerns the emotional damage we cause each other and how to take sincere, open-hearted liability, apologize and make amends.

Rectification of Emotional Damage

Most of the emotional damage done in relationships is done while lying and power playing in one of the three basic game roles: Rescuer, Persecutor or Victim. When we discover that we have been relating to others in one of these three roles it is important, as a way of rectifying the situation, to take responsibility and apologize:

RESCUE: „When I (action,) I Rescued you because: a. „I was doing something I did not want to do“ and/or b. „In my opinion, I was doing more than my fair share.“

PERSECUTION: „When I (action,) I Persecuted you because I addressed you with anger which did not fairly belong to you.“

VICTIM: „When I (action,) I acted as a Victim; I expected (or demanded) that you Rescue me.“

„I apologize, and I will endeavour to change my behavior.”

„Will you accept my apology?“

An apology to be complete has to be accepted. The injured person has to experience the desire to forgive and grant forgiveness. This requires that:

• the apology is delivered with the proper emotional tone of sadness, sorrow, shame or regret and devoid of anger, pride or self pity.
• the apology clearly states the injurious actions committed and the injured person agrees that those were the actions requiring an apology, and
• the apology assumes that forgiveness may not be forthcoming and accepts that outcome if it occurs.

Apology and Begging Forgiveness for Severe Emotional Damage.

On occasion we commit acts which are so injurious that even when such actions are forgotten and their effects swept under the rug, they leave indelible scars in their victims which can only be repaired through a major apology and offer of amends and time to heal. If, after thoughtful soul searching, the apology is accepted and forgiveness is granted, there may be psychic healing possible. However it is important that the injured party be free not to forgive, to postpone or to set conditions for forgiveness and reconsideration.
NOTES

1 Steiner, Claude. Achieving Emotional Literacy; A personal program

2 Evidence of school violence

3 Goleman Emotional Intelligence

4 Berne Eric. Transactional Analysis in Psychotherapy

5 TA TOday

6 Steiner, Claude Scripts People Live

7 Steiner, Claude Readings in Radical Psychiatry

8 Laing Ronald. The Politics of Experience

9 Sternberg, Robert. Why smart people can be so stupid. Yale University Press. Princeton 2002


11 Advantages of IQ

12

13 Salovey at al

14 Steiner Claude Healing Alcoholism

15 Darwin Charles Th Expression of the Emotions in Man and Animals

16 Gladwell, Malcolm. The Naked Face in The New Yorker Aug 5 2002


18

19 McLean, Paul

20 Adrey Robert The territorial Imperative

21 Lewis, Thomas et al A General theory of Love NY Vintage 2001

22 born empathy reference

23 overcoming trauma


25 Men less emotional than women

27 Steiner, Claude. The Warm Fuzzy Tale

28 Berne Eric. Intution and te Child

29 Berne, Eric. Games Pople Play

30 Karpman Steven. Drama Triangle

31


33 McCullough et al. Journal od Personality and Social Psychology

34 Luskin, Fred. Forgive for Good; A proven Subscription for Health and happiness. San Fran Harper 2001


36

37 Steiner, Claude. The Warm Fuzzy Tale Jalmar Press


39 Eisler Riane The Challice and the Blade
REFERENCES


Nietzsche, Friedrich, „On Truth and Lies in a Nonmoral Sense,“ essay written 1873.


Dostoyevsky, Fyodor, from his personal diary, April 16, 1864, quoted in *Fyodor*


EMOTIONAL LITERACY WORKSHEETS for Use in Emotional Literacy Training Workshops by Claude Steiner Ph.D.